

# A CHRISTIAN DISCIPLESHIP ATLAS



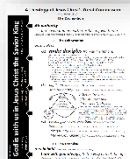
## A Christian Discipleship Atlas



**An atlas is a collection of maps. By collecting maps in one place it makes for easy reference for future.**



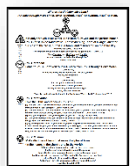
**Maps put a lot of important information on one page and are designed to be intentionally studied so that you know where you are going and how to use them as a reference for the future.**



**The following are helpful *memory aid maps* for thinking individuals who want to better understand the Christian life. These maps are designed to be intentionally studied to help you understand different aspects of the Christian life. They are also designed as references to be referred back to for the rest of your life. Furthermore, because they are collection of maps about the Christian life the following is called:  
***A Christian Discipleship Atlas (CDA)*****



**Note: Like many maps it will be necessary to zoom in for the smaller details of the memory aid maps that are in this atlas.**



**Finally, the very next page is the memory aid map that serves as a guide for the rest of this atlas.**



## What is the Christian life about?

***It is only through Jesus Christ! Jesus' Method. Jesus' Motivation. Jesus' Mission.***



Feeding  
Trough,  
Cross,  
Empty  
Tomb,  
Crown,  
Only  
Way

**It is only through Jesus Christ! He is both fully God and the perfect human. Jesus Christ is *The Good News* - The Savior King - born of a virgin, died for our sins on the cross, buried in a tomb, and resurrected on the third day.**

**"The time has come," Jesus said.**

**"The kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the good news!" - Mark 1:15**

**"I am The Way, and The Truth, and The Life;  
no one comes to the Father but through Me."**

**- Jesus, John 14:6**



Yoke,  
Clean  
Water

### **Jesus' Method:**

**Come to Jesus. Be Yoked to Jesus. Learn from Jesus through God's Word.**

**"Come to Me,**

**all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest.**

**Take My Yoke upon you**

**and**

**Learn from Me,**

**for I am gentle and humble in heart,**

**and you will find rest for your souls.**

**For My Yoke is easy and My burden is light."**

**- Jesus, Matthew 11:28-30**

**"Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth; Your Word is Truth." - Jesus, John 17:17**



Compass

### **Jesus' Motivation:**

**Love the LORD and others as Jesus did.**

**(a) Love the LORD: "Love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength." - Jesus, Mark 12:30**

**(b) Love the Church: "Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another. By this all men will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another." - Jesus, John 13:34-35**

**(c) Love your neighbor: "Love your neighbor as yourself." - Jesus, Matthew 22:39**

**(d) Love your enemies: "Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you." - Jesus, Luke 6:27-28**

**(e) By obeying God's Word: "If you love Me, you will keep My commandments. And I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Counselor [the Holy Spirit] to be with you forever. He is the Spirit of Truth. The world is unable to receive Him because it doesn't see Him or know Him. But you do know Him, because He remains with you and will be in you." - Jesus, John 14:15-17**



Lifebuoy

### **Jesus' Mission:**

**Make disciples of Jesus that make disciples of Jesus  
(in the home, in the church, and in the world).**

**"All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.**

**Go, therefore, make disciples from all the nations,**

**[note: the first step in making disciples is sharing the good news]**

**baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,**

**teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.**

**And behold, I am with you always, to the very end of the age."**

**- Jesus, Matthew 28:18-20**



# Table of Contents for the Christian Discipleship Atlas



## What is the Christian Life about?

### Discipleship to Jesus Christ



#### 1. It is only through Jesus Christ!

##### 1.1 - Mark 1:15

###### 1.1.1 - The Gift of The Good News

###### 1.1.2 - Sharing The Good News

###### 1.1.3 - God's Solution

###### 1.1.4 - Four Important Terms

###### 1.1.5 - The Gospel is Not Baptism

##### 1.2 John 14:6

###### 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



#### 2. Jesus' Method

##### 2.1 Matthew 11:28-30

###### 2.1.1 Put off and Put On

###### 2.1.2 False Repentance vs True Repentance

###### 2.1.3 Wisdom of the World vs. Wisdom from Heaven

###### 2.1.4 Growing Instructions



## **Table of Contents (page 2)**



### **2. Jesus' Method (continued)**

#### **2.2 John 17:17**

##### **2.2.1 Jesus' Spiritual Washing Method**

##### **2.2.2 Studying The Scriptures**



### **3. Jesus' Motivation**

#### **3.1 Loving as Jesus loved**

#### **3.2 What is love?**

#### **3 (a) Love the LORD**

#### **3 (b) Love others as Jesus did**

##### **3 (b.1) Love others as Jesus did – love your spouse**

##### **3 (b.2) Love others as Jesus did – love your children**

##### **3 (b.3) Love others as Jesus did – love your parents**

##### **3 (b.4) Love others as Jesus did – the local church**

##### **3 (b.5) Love others as Jesus did – The Bride of Christ**

#### **3 (c) Love your neighbor as Jesus did**

#### **3 (d) Love your enemies as Jesus did**

#### **3 (e) Love as Jesus did by obeying God's Word**



## Table of Contents (page 3)

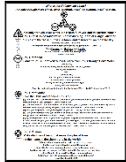


### 4. Jesus' Mission

**Matthew 28:18-20**



**A Theology of Jesus Christ's Great Commission**



**Review - What is the Christian Life about?**

### **Addendums**

- The Christian Ethical System**
- A Look at Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances**

## What is the Christian life about?

***It is only through Jesus Christ! Jesus' Method. Jesus' Motivation. Jesus' Mission.***



Feeding  
Trough,  
Cross,  
Empty  
Tomb,  
Crown,  
Only  
Way

**It is only through Jesus Christ! He is both fully God and the perfect human. Jesus Christ is *The Good News* - The Savior King - born of a virgin, died for our sins on the cross, buried in a tomb, and resurrected on the third day.**

**"The time has come," Jesus said.**

**"The kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the good news!" - Mark 1:15**

**"I am The Way, and The Truth, and The Life;  
no one comes to the Father but through Me."**

**- Jesus, John 14:6**



Yoke,  
Clean  
Water

### **Jesus' Method:**

**Come to Jesus. Be Yoked to Jesus. Learn from Jesus through God's Word.**

**"Come to Me,**

**all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest.**

**Take My Yoke upon you**

**and**

**Learn from Me,**

**for I am gentle and humble in heart,**

**and you will find rest for your souls.**

**For My Yoke is easy and My burden is light."**

**- Jesus, Matthew 11:28-30**

**"Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth; Your Word is Truth." - Jesus, John 17:17**



Compass

### **Jesus' Motivation:**

**Love the LORD and others as Jesus did.**

(a) Love the LORD: "Love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength." - Jesus, Mark 12:30

(b) Love the Church: "Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another. By this all men will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another." - Jesus, John 13:34-35

(c) Love your neighbor: "Love your neighbor as yourself." - Jesus, Matthew 22:39

(d) Love your enemies: "Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you." - Jesus, Luke 6:27-28

(e) By obeying God's Word: "If you love Me, you will keep My commandments. And I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Counselor [the Holy Spirit] to be with you forever. He is the Spirit of Truth. The world is unable to receive Him because it doesn't see Him or know Him. But you do know Him, because He remains with you and will be in you." - Jesus, John 14:15-17



Lifebuoy

### **Jesus' Mission:**

**Make disciples of Jesus that make disciples of Jesus  
(in the home, in the church, and in the world).**

**"All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.**

**Go, therefore, make disciples from all the nations,**

**[note: the first step in making disciples is sharing the good news]**

**baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,**  
**teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.**

**And behold, I am with you always, to the very end of the age."**

**- Jesus, Matthew 28:18-20**



## Discipleship to Jesus Christ

### **What is a disciple of Jesus Christ?**

In Matthew 4:19 Jesus Christ states:

***"Come, follow me,  
and  
I will make you  
fishers of people."***

**A. Come, follow me** – A disciple of Jesus Christ the Savior King is one who has come to Jesus and ***repented of their sins and trusted in Jesus Christ alone as their Lord (God) and Savior***. Christ is **the only Master Leader and Master Teacher whom they follow** (Mt. 16:24-26; 23:8-12).

**B. I will make you fishers of people** – A disciple of Jesus Christ while being **transformed by Jesus Christ** is **on mission with Jesus Christ to make disciples of Jesus Christ** who make disciples of Jesus Christ (in the home, in the church, and in the world).

Simply stated: A disciple is one who *comes to Jesus Christ* the Savior King, *follows Him*, and is *transformed by Him* as they *make disciples of Jesus Christ* with Him.

**To better understand what a disciple is, begin by reading through the book of Matthew in the Bible (try to read at least two chapters a day) and ask two questions as you read:**

**1. What does this say about Jesus Christ?**

**2. What does this say about being a disciple of Jesus Christ?**





## Discipleship to Jesus Christ

### ***What is required of a disciple of Jesus Christ?***

Jesus Christ is now your amazing Savior King and being a disciple of Jesus Christ requires your whole life and every aspect of your life. It requires a willingness to do whatever Jesus Christ directs you to do from The Scriptures and it requires a willingness to go wherever He would direct you to go.

Be encouraged for Jesus Christ is worth everything!

As Jesus Christ stated:

**“Whoever wants to be my disciple must deny themselves and take up their cross and follow me. For whoever wants to save their life will lose it, but whoever loses their life for me will find it. What good will it be for someone to gain the whole world, yet forfeit their soul? Or what can anyone give in exchange for their soul?”**

– Jesus, Matthew 16:24-26

Be encouraged for Jesus Christ carries your burdens:

**“Come to Me, all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest. Take My Yoke upon you and Learn from Me, for I am gentle and humble in heart, and you will find rest for your souls. For My Yoke is easy and My burden is light.”**

- Jesus, Matthew 11:28-30

Be encouraged for Jesus Christ is with you always:

**“And behold I am with you always, to the very end of the age.”**

- Jesus, Matthew 28:20



Be encouraged for Jesus Christ is your friend:

**“I tell you, My friends,**

**do not fear those who can kill the body,  
and after that have nothing more that they can do.**

**I will show you whom you should fear:**

**Fear the One who, after He kills, has authority  
to throw you into hell. Yes, I tell you, fear this One!**

**Are not five sparrows sold for two pennies?**

**And not one of them is forgotten before God.**

**In fact, even the hairs of your head are all numbered.**

**Do not fear; you are worth more than many sparrows . . .**

**And when they bring you before . . . the rulers and the  
authorities, do not become anxious about how**

**or what you should speak in your defense,**

**or what you should say;**

**for the Holy Spirit will teach you**

**in that very hour what you ought to say.”**

**– Jesus, Luke 12:4-6, 11**



## Discipleship to Jesus Christ



### **How to live as a disciple of Jesus Christ?**

Jesus Christ gives us a summary description of how to be a disciple in His brilliant unified teaching called *The Sermon on The Mount* in the book of Matthew in chapters five through seven.

At the end of The Sermon on the Mount Jesus states that:

**"Everyone who hears these words of mine and puts them into practice is like a wise man who built his house on the rock. The rain came down, the streams rose, and the winds blew and beat against that house; yet it did not fall, because it had its foundation on the rock. But everyone who hears these words of mine and does not put them into practice is like a foolish man who built his house on sand. The rain came down, the streams rose, and the winds blew and beat against that house, and it fell with a great crash."**

– Jesus, Matthew 7:24-27

Therefore, take some time and read and continue to re-read *The Sermon on the Mount* over and over again while each time asking the Lord to teach you to "hear" what He is saying and how to put what He is teaching "into practice." Take note of how *The Sermon on the Mount* deals with the subject of Kingdom Righteousness.

Kingdom Righteousness is about relationships. It is about being full of "rightness" – meaning being in a right *relationship* with God (both positionally and practically) and in a right relationship with others. Jesus Christ has made us permanently *positionally* right with God (*justification*). *Practically*, we can still sin; therefore, because righteousness equals being in a right relationship with God plus a right relationship with others, in order to love God and others we must be in a right relationship with both. This involves being *sanctified* by God.

## What is the Christian life about?

**It is only through Jesus Christ! Jesus' Method. Jesus' Motivation. Jesus' Mission.**



Feeding  
Trough,  
Cross,  
Empty  
Tomb,  
Crown,  
Only  
Way

**It is only through Jesus Christ! He is both fully God and the perfect human. Jesus Christ is *The Good News* - The Savior King - born of a virgin, died for our sins on the cross, buried in a tomb, and resurrected on the third day.**

**"The time has come," Jesus said.**

**"The kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the good news!" - Mark 1:15**

**"I am The Way, and The Truth, and The Life;  
no one comes to the Father but through Me."**

**- Jesus, John 14:6**



Yoke,  
Clean  
Water

### **Jesus' Method:**

**Come to Jesus. Be Yoked to Jesus. Learn from Jesus through God's Word.**

**"Come to Me,**

**all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest.**

**Take My Yoke upon you**

**and**

**Learn from Me,**

**for I am gentle and humble in heart,**

**and you will find rest for your souls.**

**For My Yoke is easy and My burden is light."**

**- Jesus, Matthew 11:28-30**

**"Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth; Your Word is Truth." - Jesus, John 17:17**



Compass

### **Jesus' Motivation:**

**Love the LORD and others as Jesus did.**

(a) Love the LORD: "Love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength." - Jesus, Mark 12:30

(b) Love the Church: "Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another. By this all men will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another." - Jesus, John 13:34-35

(c) Love your neighbor: "Love your neighbor as yourself." - Jesus, Matthew 22:39

(d) Love your enemies: "Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you." - Jesus, Luke 6:27-28

(e) By obeying God's Word: "If you love Me, you will keep My commandments. And I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Counselor [the Holy Spirit] to be with you forever. He is the Spirit of Truth. The world is unable to receive Him because it doesn't see Him or know Him. But you do know Him, because He remains with you and will be in you." - Jesus, John 14:15-17



Lifebuoy

### **Jesus' Mission:**

**Make disciples of Jesus that make disciples of Jesus  
(in the home, in the church, and in the world).**

**"All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.**

**Go, therefore, make disciples from all the nations,**

**[note: the first step in making disciples is sharing the good news]**

**baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,**

**teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.**

**And behold, I am with you always, to the very end of the age."**

**- Jesus, Matthew 28:18-20**





## Section 1 - It is only through Jesus Christ!



### It is only through Jesus Christ!

He is both fully God and the perfect human.

Jesus Christ is *The Good News* - The Savior King –  
born of a virgin, died for our sins on the cross, buried in a tomb, and  
resurrected on the third day.



The above memory aid represents:

#### A Feeding Trough

Mary “gave birth to her first-born son; and she wrapped Him in cloths, and laid him in a manger [a feeding through], because there was no room for them in the inn.” - Luke 2:7

#### The Cross and The Empty Tomb

Jesus Christ “died for our sins according to the Scriptures, he was buried, and he was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures” - 1 Corinthians 15:3-4

#### The Crown

“Jesus crowned with glory and honor because of his having suffered death, in order that by the grace [unmerited favor] of God he might experience death for everyone.” - Hebrews 2:9

#### The Only Way

“The time has come,” Jesus said.

“The kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the good news!” - Mark 1:15

“I am The Way, and The Truth, and The Life;  
no one comes to the Father but through Me.”

- Jesus, John 14:6



Intentionally Remember - Mark 1:15

**“The time has come,”  
Jesus said.**

**“The kingdom of God  
is near.**

**Repent and believe  
the good news!”**

**-Mark 1:15**



## Section 1.1.1 - The Gift of The Good News



Jesus Christ has commanded his disciples to:  
**“Go, therefore, make disciples from all the nations,”**

[Note: this is an IMPERATIVE COMMAND – MEANING: DO THIS!]

The first step in making disciples of Jesus Christ  
is to share the good news about Jesus Christ.

The Gospel which means The Good News is that:

**Jesus Christ “died for our sins  
according to the Scriptures,  
he was buried,  
and he was raised on the third day  
according to the Scriptures.”**

**-1 Corinthians 15:3-4**

There are many different ways to share the gospel.

The following is one way to share it:

The memory aid map on the next two pages is  
a detailed explanation from the Scriptures  
to help you better understand  
*The Good News* and how it is truly good news!

Note: The very next page – “The Good News” has been adapted and expanded upon  
from the class Theology of the Gospel (originally developed by Jeff Dodge)

Located at 1T3Life.org is a PDF color version of the  
*The Gift of The Good News* handout  
located under the “The Good News” button.

**Loving Creator**

"The God who made the world and everything in it"

-Acts 17:24a

**The Ultimate Lord & King**

"is the Lord of heaven and earth and does not live in temples built by hands. And he is not served by human hands, as if he needed anything, because he himself gives all men life and breath and everything else."

-Acts 17:24b-25

**The Law Giver & Final Judge**

"In the past God overlooked such ignorance, but now he commands all people everywhere to repent. For he has set a day when he will judge the world with justice by the man he has appointed. He has given proof of this to all men by raising him from the dead."

-Acts 17:30-31

**THE PROBLEM****We Have All Broken God's Law by Our Sin**

"No one is [essentially and perfectly morally] good--except God only. You know the commandments: Do not commit adultery, do not murder, do not steal, do not witness falsely, honor your father and your mother."

- Jesus

Luke 18:19b-20

"You have heard that it was said to the people long ago, 'Do not murder, and anyone who murders will be subject to judgment.' But I tell you that anyone who is angry with his brother will be subject to judgment."

- Jesus

Matthew 5:21-22a

"You have heard that it was said, 'Do not commit adultery.' But I tell you that anyone who looks at a woman lustfully has already committed adultery with her in his heart."

- Jesus

Matthew 5:27-28

"For out of the heart come evil thoughts, murder, adultery, sexual immorality, theft, false testimony, slander."

- Jesus

Matthew 15:19

**Willfully Ignorant**

"The wrath of God is being revealed from heaven against all the godlessness and wickedness of men who suppress the truth by their wickedness, since what may be known about God is plain to them, because God has made it plain to them. For since the creation of the world God's invisible qualities - His eternal power and divine nature - have been clearly seen, being understood from what has been made, so that men are without excuse."

-Romans 1:18-20

**Passionately Rebellious**

"For although they knew God, they neither glorified him as God nor gave thanks to him, but their thinking became futile and their foolish hearts were darkened. Although they claimed to be wise, they became fools and exchanged the glory of the immortal God for images made to look like mortal man and birds and animals and reptiles."

-Romans 1:21-23

**Condemned to Death**

"But because of your stubbornness and your unrepentant heart, you are storing up wrath against yourself for the day of God's wrath, when His righteous judgment will be revealed."

-Romans 2:5

**THE GOOD NEWS****Solution - God Paid The Penalty for Our Sin**

Jesus Christ "died for our sins according to the Scriptures, he was buried, and he was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures."

-1 Corinthians 15:3-4

"God demonstrates His own love for us in this: While we were still sinners, Christ died for us."

-Romans 5:8

"God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God."

-2 Corinthians 5:21

"God did this to demonstrate His justice . . . so as to be just and the one who justifies those who have faith in Jesus."

-Romans 3:25b-26

"For God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal life. For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but to save the world through him. Whoever believes in him is not condemned, but whoever does not believe stands condemned already because he has not believed in the name of God's one and only Son."

- Jesus

-John 3:16-21

**Repent & Believe**

"The time has come," Jesus said.

"The kingdom of God is near.

**Repent and believe the good news!"**

-Mark 1:15

**DECISION****Refuse It & Perish**

"But unless you repent, you too will all perish."

- Jesus

Luke 13:5

**HOW WILL YOU RESPOND?**

"Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life, but whoever rejects the Son will not see life, for God's wrath remains on him."

-John 3:36



## **(2) "The time has come," Jesus said.**

"It is appointed for people to die once – and after this, judgment." -Hebrews 9:27

"For God says: 'In the time of my favor I heard you, and in the day of salvation I helped you.' I tell you now is the time of God's favor, now is the day of salvation."

-2 Corinthians 6:1-2

## **(3) "Repent and believe the good news!"**

How do you receive the gift of eternal life?

**Repent (turn away from your sin)**

Say aloud to God, "God have mercy on me – a sinner. Jesus Christ, I turn away from my sin." (Luke 18:13)

**Believe (trust in the Lord Jesus Christ)**

Say aloud to God, "Jesus is Lord! Jesus Christ, I believe that you died for my sins, that you were buried, and that you were raised from the dead. I trust in you now as my Lord and Savior. Thank you for saving me from the judgement for my sins and thank you for giving me the gift of eternal life." (Romans 10:9-10, John 9:38, 1 Corinthians 15:3, Romans 6:23)

As the Scriptures state:

"If you confess with your mouth that 'Jesus is Lord,'  
and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved."

-Romans 10:9-10

## **(4) The Gift of God is Eternal Life**

"For the wages of sin is death,  
but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord."

-Romans 6:23

"We accept man's testimony, but God's testimony is greater because it is the testimony of God, which he has given about his Son. Anyone who does not believe God has made Him out to be a liar, because he has not believed the testimony God has given about His Son. And this is the testimony: God has given us eternal life, and this life is in His Son. He who has the Son has life; he who does not have the Son of God does not have life. **I write these to you who believe in the name of the Son of God so that you may know that you have eternal life.**"

-1 John 5:9-13

## **(5) What's Next?**

Experience the joy of knowing God and growing in your relationship with God and with God's family/the church. Obey the Lord Jesus by following His example and being baptized. Ask the Lord Jesus to teach you. Read and obey the Scriptures. Tell others the good news. Live for the Lord Jesus.

"Those who live should no longer live for themselves but for Him  
who died for them and was raised again."

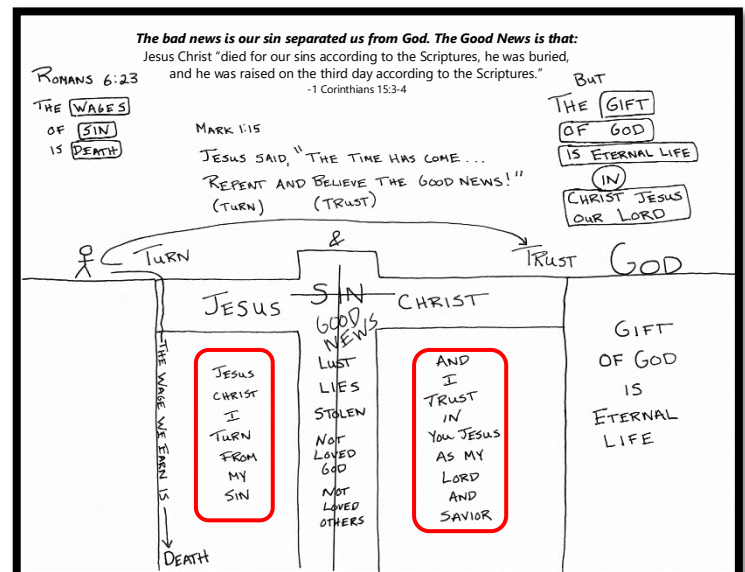
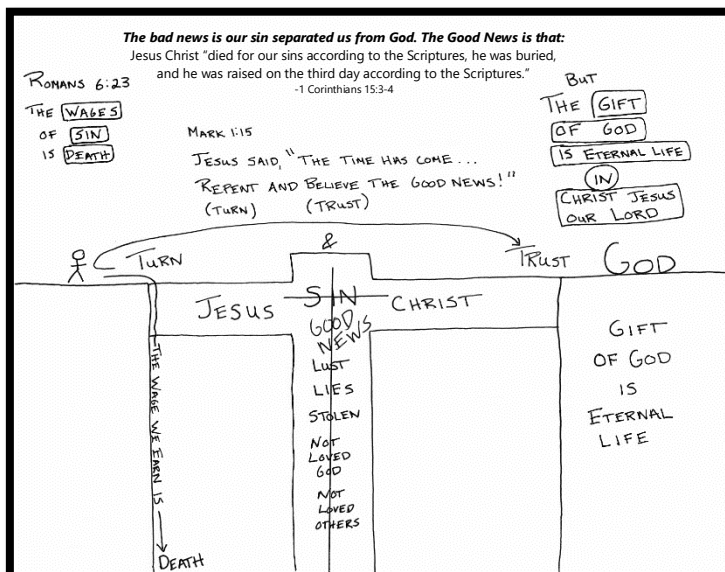
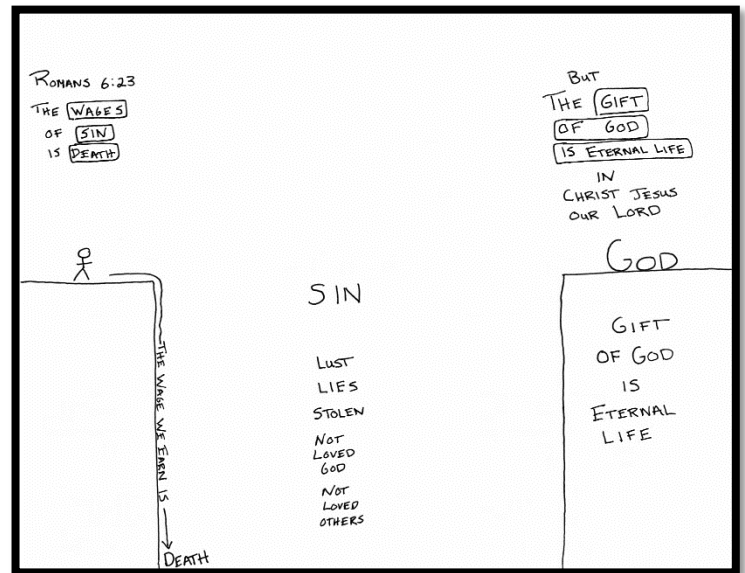
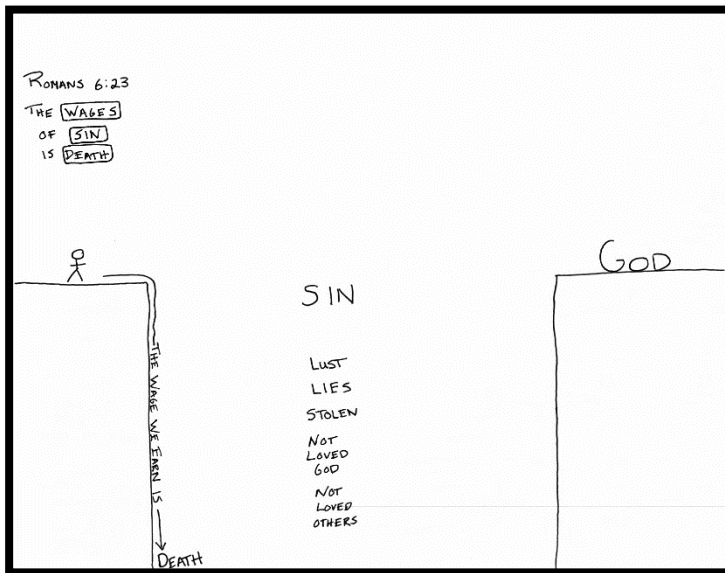
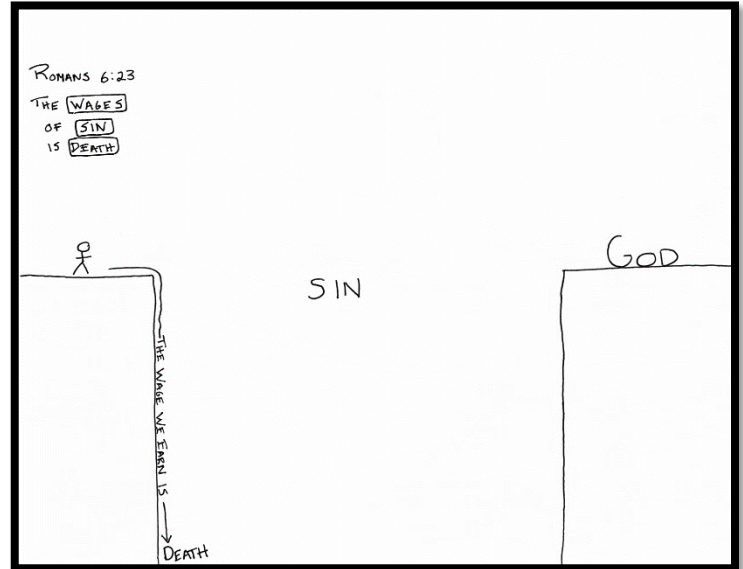
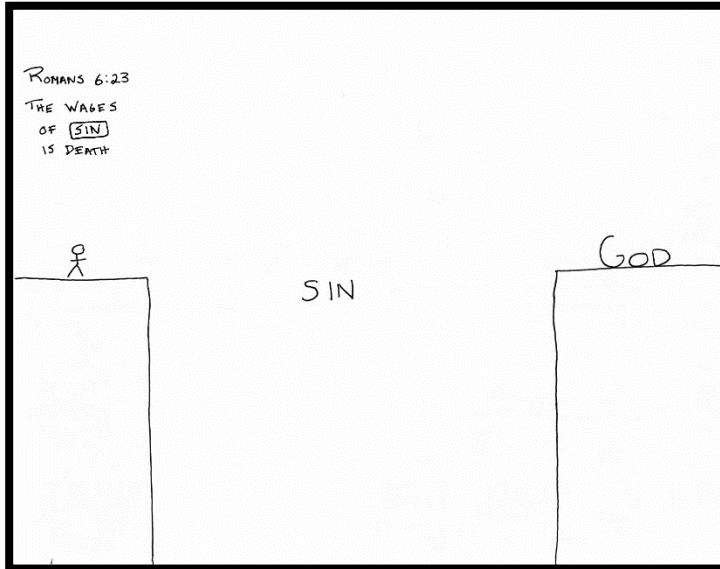
-2 Corinthians 5:15b

To God be the Glory! This handout is free and is intended for encouragement and educational purposes.  
For more information and for free handouts like this please go to: [1T3Life.org](http://1T3Life.org)



## Section 1.1.2 – Sharing The Good News

The first step in making disciples of Jesus Christ is to share the good news. The following is one way to share the good news:





## Section 1.1.3 – God’s Solution



God’s Solution - God paid the penalty for our Sin:

**Jesus Christ “died for our sins according to the Scriptures, he was buried, and he was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures.”** -1 Corinthians 15:3-4

Eternal life is a gift from God. It *cannot* be earned:

**“For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.”** -Romans 6:23

Eternal life *cannot* be earned by any amount of good works. It is only by faith [trust] in Jesus as Lord and Savior that we can have eternal life:

**“By grace [unearned favor] you have been saved through faith [trust in Jesus Christ as Lord and Savior]—and this not from yourselves, it is the gift of God —not by works, so that no one can boast.”** -Ephesians 2:8-9

**“If you confess with your mouth that ‘Jesus is Lord,’ and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved.”** -Romans 10:9-10

In Jesus Christ you are permanently forgiven forever by God:

**“God made him [Jesus Christ] who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him [Jesus Christ] we might become the righteousness of God.”** -2 Corinthians 5:21

You can know that you have eternal life:

**“God has given us eternal life, and this life is in His Son. He who has the Son has life; he who does not have the Son of God does not have life. I write these to you who believe in the name of the Son of God so that you may know that you have eternal life.”** -1 John 5:9-13

Nothing can separate you from God’s love in Jesus Christ:

**“Neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor things present, nor things to come, nor powers, nor height, nor depth, nor any other created thing, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.”** -Romans 8:38-39



## Section 1.1.4 – Four Important Terms



### **Four Important Terms to Understand**



**Sin:** this is hostility towards God in our affections, our mind, and our will. Sin is the worship of yourself, the worship of others, and the worship of any created thing in this world.

**“For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God.”**

- Romans 3:23

**“The mind set on the flesh is hostile toward God; for it does not subject itself to the Law of God, for it is not even able to do so; and those who are in the flesh cannot please God.”**

- Romans 8:7



**Justification:** takes place when *the penalty for sin* (past, present, and future) has been paid for in Jesus Christ – this happens when you, by the grace of God, repent of your sins and trust in Jesus Christ as your Lord and Savior - you are then declared “NOT guilty!” and you are justified in Christ.

**“Therefore, since we are justified [past tense] by faith,  
we have peace [present tense] with God  
through our Lord Jesus Christ.”**

- Romans 5:1



**Sanctification:** this is the cleansing process that continues from when you are justified until you are glorified. During this time *the power of sin* in your life to control you has been broken and as you grow in Christ you experience the blessing of being washed by The Holy Spirit through God’s Word.

**“Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth;  
Your Word is Truth.”**

- Jesus, John 17:17



**Glorification:** this happens once you are in heaven and it is there with God that you are completely set free from *the presence of sin* in your life. Once you are justified in Christ, God already knows you as glorified in Christ because God knows both the past, the present, and the future. Thus, we can approach God with confidence because we can know that God already knows us as perfect in Christ.

**“Those He [God] justified, He also glorified.”**

- Romans 8:28-30

**“He [God] will wipe every tear from their eyes.  
There will be no more death or mourning or crying or pain,  
for the old order of things has passed away.”**

- Revelation 21:4

**“The Lord will rescue me from every evil deed  
and will bring me safely into His Heavenly Kingdom,  
to Him be the glory for all time. Amen.”**





## Section 1.1.5 – The Gospel is Not Baptism



### Baptism is an Important Symbol of Obedience to Jesus Christ

#### MUST BE A DISCIPLE

First, the Scriptures teach that one must be a disciple of Jesus (meaning: a disciple of Jesus Christ the Savior King is one who has repented of their sins and trusted in Jesus Christ alone as their Lord and Savior ) *first* and then, *second*, this is followed by baptism (which is immersion by water in the New Testament). This is clear in the great commission by Jesus Christ when Jesus states “Going, therefore, make disciples from all the nations, **baptizing [immersing] them** in the name . . .” (Matthew 28:19).

(Q) Who is the “them” that is being baptized?

(A) Only disciples of the Lord Jesus Christ.

(Q) How does one become a disciple of Jesus?

(A) Only by repenting of their sin and trusting in Jesus as their Lord and Savior.

Thus, one must be a believer in the Lord Jesus Christ *first* and then, *second*, they are to be immersed “in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit” (Matthew 28:19). Furthermore, a scriptural text-driven understanding of baptism in 1 Corinthians reveals that “baptism” is the “immersion” (not sprinkling) of individuals who are not infants and have heard the “the word” of the “the gospel” (that the Lord Jesus Christ “died for our sins according to the Scriptures, and that He was buried, and that He was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures”), “received” the gospel, “believed” in the gospel, are “saved” by the gospel, and who “devoted themselves” to obeying the Lord Jesus Christ by “serving the saints” and being of the Lord Jesus Christ alone (1 Cor 1:10-17, 15:1-4, 15:11, 16:15). Therefore, because one must be a disciple of Jesus before one is baptized, New Testament baptism is then appropriately called Believer’s Baptism.

#### THE GOSPEL IS NOT BAPTISM

“For Christ did not send me to baptize, but to preach the gospel”

-1 Cor 1:17

#### INFANTS ARE NOT DISCIPLES

The clear pattern in 1 Corinthians of being taught the gospel, then believing the gospel, and then being baptized [immersed] is the same pattern in the book of Acts. Just as the “household” in 1 Corinthians is not applicable to infants because one does not teach infants and infants can’t believe in the gospel the same is true in the book of Acts. For example Acts 16:16-33 states, “They said, ‘**Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved**, you and your household.’ **And they spoke the word of the Lord to him together with all who were in his house.** And he took them that very hour of the night and washed their wounds, and immediately he was immersed, he and all his household. And he brought them into his house and set food before them, and rejoiced greatly, **having believed in God with his whole household.**” Note: how they “spoke the word of the Lord to him together with all who were in his house.” Thus, these were not infants because these individuals in this house were taught “the word of the Lord,” then they believed, and then they were immersed. Paul does state that he did “immerse the household of Stephanas” (1 Cor 1:16). However, it is clear from later in 1 Corinthians that all of the members of the household were of an age where they could have heard the gospel and believed for Paul states that “the household of Stephanas” was “the first fruits of Achaia, and that **they have devoted themselves for ministry** to the saints” (1 Cor 16:15). Infants cannot devote themselves to ministry.

#### THE SYMBOL = BURIED & RAISED WITH CHRIST

“What should we say then? Should we continue in sin so that grace may multiply? <sup>2</sup> Absolutely not! How can we who died to sin still live in it? <sup>3</sup> Or are you unaware that all of us who were baptized [immersed] into Christ Jesus were baptized [immersed] into his death? <sup>4</sup> Therefore we were buried with him by baptism [immersion] into death, in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, so we too may walk in newness of life. <sup>5</sup> For if we have been united with him in the likeness of his death, we will certainly also be in the likeness of his resurrection. <sup>6</sup> For we know that our old self was crucified with him so that the body ruled by sin might be rendered powerless so that we may no longer be enslaved to sin, <sup>7</sup> since a person who has died is freed from sin. <sup>8</sup> Now if we died with Christ, we believe that we will also live with him, <sup>9</sup> because we know that Christ, having been raised from the dead, will not die again. Death no longer rules over him. <sup>10</sup> For the death he died, he died to sin once for all time; but the life he lives, he lives to God. <sup>11</sup> So, you too consider yourselves dead to sin and alive to God in Christ Jesus.”-Romans 6:1-11

#### BAPTISM DOES NOT SAVE YOU

“If you confess with your mouth that ‘Jesus is Lord,’ and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, **you will be saved.**”

-Romans 10:9-10

#### BAPTISM IS IMMERSION

The New Testament Koiné Greek word βαπτίζω (which is typically transliterated as *baptizō* and then typically this transliteration is communicated as *baptize* in English). It is important to note that βαπτίζω does not carry the idea of “sprinkling them with water” in the New Testament. Instead, “βαπτίζω” carries the Greek dictionary definition of “immerse” (William D. Mounce and Robert H. Mounce, gen. ed., *The Zondervan Greek and English Interlinear New Testament (NASB/NIV)* (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2011), 939); “βαπτίζω” is defined “In Gk. Lit. . . . to put or go under water” (Walter Bauer, *A Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament*, ed. and trans. William F. Arndt, F. Wilber Gingrich, and Frederick W. Danker [BAGD], 3rd ed. (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2000), s.v. “βαπτίζω,” 164), **Note:** to “put or go under water” is to immerse something; “The verb *baptizō* literally means ‘to put or go under water’” (William D. Mounce, gen. ed. *Mounce’s Complete Expository Dictionary of Old & New Testament Words* (Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2006), 52; Furthermore, the word baptism is defined as “consisting of the processes of immersion” (W. E. Vine, Merrill F. Unger, William White, Jr. *Vine’s Complete Expository Dictionary of Old and New Testament Words* (Nashville: Thomas Nelson, 1996), 50).



Intentionally Remember – John 14:6

**“I am  
The Way,  
and  
The Truth,  
and  
The Life;  
no one comes  
to the Father  
but through Me.”  
-Jesus, John 14:6**



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



“Let us fix our eyes on Jesus,  
the author and perfecter of our faith,  
who for the joy set before Him endured the cross,  
scorning its shame, and sat down at the right hand of the throne of God.”  
- Hebrews 12:2

“He must increase, I must decrease.”  
-John 3:30

### **Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human**

#### **There is Only One True God**

“I am Yahweh and there is no other, apart from me there is no God”-Isaiah 45:5 (see also Isaiah 43:10-13)

“I am the First and I am the Last; apart from me there is no God”-Isaiah 44:6 (see also Isaiah 48:12)

#### **Yahweh is the Only True God’s Name**

“I am Yahweh; that is my name!”-Isaiah 42:8 (also Exodus 3)

“I am Yahweh, the God of all mankind”-Jeremiah 32:26

“Yahweh is God”-Psalm 100:3

#### **Yahweh is the Creator and Sustainer of All that *has* Being**

“This is what Yahweh, your Redeemer who formed you from the womb, says: I am Yahweh, who made everything”-Is.44:24 “Yahweh God made the earth and the heavens.”-Gen. 2:4

“God, who gives life to all things”-1 Tim.6:13

“The God who made the world and everything in it—He is Lord of heaven and earth and does not live in shrines made by hands. Neither is He served by human hands, as though He needed anything, since He Himself gives everyone life and breath and all things . . . He is not far from each one of us. For in Him we live and move and have our being.”-Acts 17:24-28

#### **Yahweh is One God (What 1) Yahweh is Three Persons (Who 1, Who 2, Who 3)**

“the name [singular not plural, What 1] of the Father [Who 1] and the Son [Who 2] and of the Holy Spirit [Who 3]”-Jesus, Matthew 28:19 (see Deut. 6:4; Romans 1:1-5; 3 John 7; 2 Cor. 13:14; Eph. 1:17; Col. 1:12-14; John 1:1-18; 2 John 9; John 14-17, etc.)

#### **Yahweh is the Only Savior**

“God also said to Moses, “Say to the Israelites, ‘Yahweh, the God of your fathers—the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob—has sent me to you.’ This is my name forever, the name by which I am to be remembered from generation to generation.”-Exodus 3:15

“I am Yahweh and apart from me there is no savior.”-Isaiah 43:11



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### **Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)**

#### **Yahweh is the Only Savior (continued)**

"I am Yahweh, that is My name; I will not give My glory to another or My praise to idols."-Isaiah 42:8

"I am Yahweh, and there is no other. I have not spoken in secret . . . I, Yahweh, speak the truth; I declare what is right. Gather together and come; assemble, you fugitives from the nations. Ignorant are those who carry about idols of wood, who pray to gods that cannot save . . . And there is no God apart from me, a righteous God and a Savior; there is none but Me. Turn to me and be saved . . . for I am God, and there is no other . . . Before me every knee will bow; by me every tongue will swear."-Isaiah 45:18-25

Our sin separated us from Yahweh God; therefore, the Son added a Human Nature, Jesus which means "Yahweh saves" (Matt.1:21). He lived the perfect life, and died on the cross as a perfect substitutionary atoning sacrifice for our sin, and the perfect demonstration of Yahweh God's love and justice (Jn. 3:16, Rom. 3:26, etc.), and rose again demonstrating that the Son is God. That is why He has the title of Immanuel/"God with us"(Matt.1:23)

"Jesus Christ, the Son of God"-Mark 1:1 (2 Cor. 1:19)

"Christ Jesus: who, existing in very nature God . . . assuming the form of a servant, taking on the likeness of men. And when He had come as a man in His external form, He humbled Himself by becoming obedient to the point of death— even to death on a cross . . . so that at the name of Jesus [Yahweh Saves] every knee will bow . . . and every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord"-Phil. 2:5-11

"Set apart for the gospel of God— the gospel He [The Father] promised beforehand through His prophets in the Holy Scriptures regarding His Son [The Son], who as to his human nature was a descendant of David, and who through The Spirit of Holiness [The Holy Spirit] was declared with power to be the Son of God by his resurrection from the dead: Jesus Christ our Lord. Through him and for His name's sake, we received grace and apostleship to call people from among all the nations to the obedience that comes from faith."-Romans 1:1-5 (see John 14-17, Eph. 3:14-21, etc.)

"Before Abraham came into being, I AM."-Jesus, John 8:58

"I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End."-Jesus, Rev.22:13

"Jesus Christ is the same yesterday and today and forever."-Hebrews 13:8

"I am with you always"-Jesus, Matt. 28:20

"Our God and Savior Jesus Christ"-2 Peter 1:1

"Thomas answered and said to Him, 'My Lord and my God!' Jesus said to him, 'Because you have seen Me, have you believed? Blessed are they who did not see, and yet believed.'" -John 20:28-29 (John 1:1-14,17-18; Col. 1:15-17; Heb. 13:8, etc.)

#### **Jesus is the God Man (fully God and the perfect man) – the Personal Living Word**

"In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God . . . And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth."-John 1:1,14

Jesus "The Word of God"-Revelation 19:13



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### **Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)**

#### **Jesus is The Most Brilliant One - whatever Jesus says is true, because Jesus is The Truth**

"He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn over all creation. For everything was created by Him, in heaven and on earth, the visible and the invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities— all things have been created through Him and for Him. He is before all things, and by Him all things hold together . . . All the treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden in Him."-Col. 1:15-17, 2:3

"I am . . . The Truth"-Jesus, John 14:6

"The Truth is in Jesus"-Ephesians 4:21

"It is impossible for God to lie."-Hebrews 6:18

#### **Jesus Christ was born of a virgin and placed in a feeding trough:**

"Now in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God to a city in Galilee, called Nazareth, <sup>27</sup> to a virgin engaged to a man whose name was Joseph, of the descendants of David; and the virgin's name was Mary. <sup>28</sup> And coming in, he said to her, "Hail, favored one! The LORD is with you." <sup>29</sup> But she was greatly troubled at this statement, and kept pondering what kind of salutation this might be. <sup>30</sup> And the angel said to her, "Do not be afraid, Mary; for you have found favor with God. <sup>31</sup> "And behold, you will conceive in your womb, and bear a son, and you shall name Him Jesus. <sup>32</sup> "He will be great, and will be called the Son of the Most High; and the LORD God will give Him the throne of His father David; <sup>33</sup> and He will reign over the house of Jacob forever; and His kingdom will have no end." <sup>34</sup> And Mary said to the angel, "How can this be, since I am a virgin?" <sup>35</sup> And the angel answered her, "The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; therefore the child to be born will be called holy—the Son of God. <sup>36</sup> And behold, your relative Elizabeth in her old age has also conceived a son, and this is the sixth month with her who was called barren. <sup>37</sup> For nothing will be impossible with God." <sup>38</sup> And Mary said, "Behold, I am the servant of the LORD; let it be to me according to your word." And the angel departed from her."-Luke 1:26-38

Mary "gave birth to her first-born son; and she wrapped Him in cloths, and laid him in a manger [a feeding trough], because there was no room for them in the inn." -Luke 2:7

#### **Jesus Christ lived the perfect life without sin:**

"For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but we have one who has been tempted in every way, just as we are—yet was without sin."-Hebrews 4:15

#### **Jesus Christ died for our sins on the cross, was buried in a tomb, and was resurrected (rose from the dead) on the third day:**

Jesus Christ "died for our sins according to the Scriptures, he was buried, and he was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures" - 1 Corinthians 15:3-4





## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### **Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)**

#### **THEREFORE, JESUS CHRIST STATES:**

**“I am The Way, and The Truth, and The Life;  
no one comes to the Father but through Me.”**

- Jesus, John 14:6

#### **The Way:**

In the book of John the word *way* means the means of access/how one gets there. This is clear from the textual clues in these verses: John 1:23, John 14:4, John 14:5, John 14:6. For example in verse John 1:13, the Apostle John being moved by the Holy Spirit writes about John the Baptist that he is declaring to ‘Make straight the way for the Lord.’ Thus, prepare the means of access for the Lord’s coming. Furthermore, in John 14:4 Jesus states that “You know the way to the place where I am going.” Meaning *you know the means of access to the place I am going*. This is further demonstrated by Thomas’ response in John 14:5 when he states “Lord, we don’t know where you are going, so how can we know the way?” Meaning how can we know the means of access to where you are going. Then Jesus makes his statement in the very next verse that He is “I am The Way” and that “No one comes to the Father except through me.” Therefore, The Way in John 14:6 means that Jesus is The ONLY means of access to God the Father. This is significant for apart from Jesus Christ there is no other way that that we can get to God the Father.

#### **The Truth:**

In the book of John the word *truth* primarily means Divine Truth/The Word of God revealed from God to people and therefore truth is that which corresponds to God (that which is) and thus it corresponds to the how reality actually is, which is the opposite of the Devil’s lies. This is clear from the textual clues in these verses John 1:14; John 1:17; John 3:21; John 4:23; John 5:33; John 8:32; John 8:40; John 8:44; John 14:6; John 14:17; John 15:26; John 16:7; John 16:13; John 17:17; John 18:37. For example Jesus stated, “Sanctify them by The Truth; Your Word is Truth” (Jn 17:17). First, notice how in this statement Jesus has qualified what The Truth is. Therefore, The Truth is only the Word of God in this statement, and anything outside of the category of the Word of God in this statement is not to be qualified as The Truth. As Jesus stated, “Your Word is Truth” (Jn 17:17). Thus, in this statement “The Truth” = “The Word of God.” [Note: truth is that which corresponds to that which is (reality/being). For example: 2+2=4 is true because if you have two rocks and you add two more rocks then you get four rocks. Thus, it corresponds to that which is. There are many true truths in God’s creation; however, only the Scriptures (The Truth) are used for spiritual washing.] Furthermore, John 1:14 it states that “The Word became flesh and made his dwelling among us. We have seen his glory, the glory of the one and only Son, who came from the Father, full of grace and truth” and in John 1:17 it states that “For The Law was given through Moses; The Grace and The Truth came through Jesus Christ.” Therefore, when Jesus states that He is “The Truth” (John 14:6) He is stating that He is the Living Word of God, the Living Truth. Thus, Jesus states in John 18:37 “the reason I was born and came into the world is to testify to The Truth. Everyone who is of The Truth listens to my voice.” In contrast, those who do not listen to Jesus (who is fully God) are instead listening to the Devil. As Jesus in John 8:44 states “You belong to your father, the devil, and you want to carry out your father’s desires. He was a murderer from the beginning, not holding to The Truth, for there is no truth in him. When he lies, he speaks his native language, for he is a liar and the father of lies.”



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)

#### The Truth (continued):

To clarify:

God is The Word (Logos) and The Word (Logos) is The Truth. The Scriptures are the written Word; thus, the Scriptures are the written Truth. God the Son, The Word (Logos), added a human nature and became flesh. Thus, Jesus Christ is the God Man (both fully God and fully Man) who lived on the earth and is still living. Therefore, Jesus Christ is The Truth. Those who listen to Jesus Christ, who is The Truth, are listening to God because Jesus Christ is fully God. Because God's written Word comes from God it is therefore The Truth. Those who reject Jesus Christ are listening to the Devil. Those who reject God's Word are listening to the Devil.

#### The Life:

In the book of John the *primary* use of the word *life* means eternal life, life with no death because one is then with God. This is clear from the textual clues in these verses John 1:4; John 3:15; John 3:16; John 3:36; John 4:14; John 4:36; John 5:24; John 5:26; John 5:29; John 5:39; John 6:27; John 6:33; John 6:35; John 6:40; John 6:47; John 6:51; John 6:53; John 6:63. For example, Jesus in John 5:24 states: "Very truly I tell you, whoever hears My Word and believes him who sent me has eternal life and will not be judged but has crossed over from death to life." This eternal life is life without death in Jesus Christ because eternal life is knowing God, as Jesus states, in John 17:2-3 "For you granted him authority over all people that he might give eternal life to all those you have given him. Now this is eternal life: that they know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom you have sent." Therefore, Jesus in John 5:26 states, "For as the Father has life in himself, so he has granted the Son also to have life in himself." Thus, when Jesus states in John 14:6 that "I am ... The Life" he is stating that He is eternal life and with him there is life no death because one is then with God.

**Simply summarized:** In John 14:6 Jesus states the following: "I am The Way and The Truth and The Life. No one comes to the Father except through me." What Jesus is saying is that *He is The Only Means* (The Way) of getting to God because *He is God* (The Divine Word/The Truth) and therefore *He is Eternal Life* (The Life).

#### **Jesus is the propitiation for my sins [the perfect substitutionary atoning sacrifice that takes away the wrath of God] – "IT IS FINISHED":**

"for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, <sup>24</sup> being justified as a gift by His grace through the redemption which is in Christ Jesus; <sup>25</sup> whom God displayed publicly as a propitiation in His blood through faith. This was to demonstrate His righteousness, because in the forbearance of God He passed over the sins previously committed; <sup>26</sup> for the demonstration of His righteousness at the present time, so that He would be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus."-Romans 3:23-26

"Therefore, He had to be made like His brethren in all things, so that He might become a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, to make propitiation for the sins of the people."-Hebrews 2:17

"My little children, I am writing these things to you so that you may not sin. And if anyone sins, we have an Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous; <sup>2</sup> and **He Himself is the propitiation for our sins**; and not for ours only, but also for *those of the whole world*."-1 John 2:1-2

"He said, **"It is finished,"** and he bowed his head and gave up his spirit."-John 19:30



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### **Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)**

#### **God is with us in Jesus Christ the Savior King**

**Jesus Christ was called Immanuel because this title means God is with us**

"The virgin will conceive and give birth to a son, and they will call Him 'Immanuel' (which means 'God with us')." -Matthew 1:23

**The name Jesus means Yahweh Saves**

"She will bear a Son; and you shall call His name Jesus, for He will save His people from their sins." -Matthew 1:21

**Jesus is The Christ which means The Anointed One/The Messiah (The Savior) that is predicted throughout The Scriptures**

"An account of the genealogy of Jesus Christ" -Matthew 1:1

**Jesus Christ declared that He was God, The King, and that Kingdom of God was present in Him**

Jesus began to preach, saying, "Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand." -Matthew 4:17

"When the Son of Man [see Matthew 26:63-64 and Daniel 7:13-14] comes in His glory, and all the angels with Him, then He will sit on His glorious throne.<sup>32</sup> All the nations will be gathered before Him, and He will separate the people one from another as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats;<sup>33</sup> and He will place the sheep on his right, and the goats on the left.<sup>34</sup> Then the King will say to those on His right, 'Come, you who are blessed by my Father; inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.'" -Jesus Christ, Matthew 25:31-34

**Therefore, Jesus Christ is the omnipotent (all powerful) Savior King and He therefore has all authority**

"All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. Go, therefore, make disciples from all the nations" -Jesus, Matthew 28:18-20

**Furthermore, because Jesus Christ is fully God, He will never leave us**

"He has said, 'I will never leave you nor forsake you.' So we can confidently say, 'The LORD is my helper; I will not fear; what can man do to me?'" -Hebrews 13:5-6

"My sheep hear My voice, and I know them, and they follow Me; and I give eternal life to them, and they shall never perish; and no one shall snatch them out of My hand." -Jesus Christ, John 10:27-28

**Therefore, He can command us to behold the fact that He is omnipresent (always present)**

"And behold, I am with you always, to the very end of the age." -Jesus Christ, Matthew 28:20

**Jesus Christ, who is fully God, declares at the beginning of The Great Commission that He is omnipotent (all powerful) and at the end that He is omnipresent (always present)**



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)

#### It is only through Jesus Christ that we can be saved and live the Christian life

"I have been crucified with Christ and I no longer live, but Christ lives in me. The life I live in the body, I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave himself for me."-Galatians 2:20

#### Jesus is The Master Teacher

"For One is your Master Teacher, and you are all brothers."-Jesus, Matthew 23:8

#### Jesus is The Master Leader

"One is your Master Leader, that is, Christ."-Jesus, Matthew 23:10

#### Jesus is The Chief Shepherd

"The Chief Shepherd."-1 Peter 5:4

#### Jesus is The Bridegroom

"Christ also loved the church and gave Himself up for her, so that He might sanctify her, having cleansed her by the washing of water with The Word, that He might present to Himself the church in all her glory, having no spot or wrinkle or any such thing; but that she would be holy and blameless."-Ephesians 5:25-27

#### Jesus loved perfectly:

"There is no fear in love. But **perfect love drives out fear.**"-1 John 4:18a

"This is how we know what **love is: Jesus Christ laid down his life for us. And we ought to lay down our lives for our brothers.**"-1 John 3:16

#### Jesus was humble:

"Come to me, all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest. <sup>29</sup>Take my yoke upon you and learn from me, for I am **gentle and humble in heart**, and you will find rest for your souls. <sup>30</sup>For my yoke is easy and my burden is light."-Matthew 11:28-30

"**He had no beauty or majesty to attract us to him, nothing in his appearance that we should desire him.** <sup>3</sup>He was despised and rejected by men, **a man of sorrows, and familiar with suffering. Like one from whom men hide their faces he was despised, and we esteemed him not.**"-Isaiah 53:2b-3

"**If you have any encouragement from being united with Christ**, if any comfort from his love, if any fellowship with the Spirit, if any tenderness and compassion, <sup>2</sup> then make my joy complete by being like-minded, having the same love, being one in spirit and purpose. <sup>3</sup> **Do nothing out of selfish ambition or vain conceit, but in humility consider others better than yourselves.** <sup>4</sup> **Each of you should look not only to your own interests, but also to the interests of others.**

<sup>5</sup> Make your own attitude that of Christ Jesus, <sup>6</sup> who, existing in the form of God, did not consider equality with God as something to be used for His own advantage. <sup>7</sup> Instead He emptied Himself by assuming the form of a slave, taking on the likeness of men. And when He had come as a man in His external form,

<sup>8</sup> **He humbled Himself by becoming obedient to the point of death— even to death on a cross.**

<sup>9</sup> For this reason God highly exalted Him and gave Him the name that is above every name,

<sup>10</sup> so that at the name of Jesus every knee will bow— of those who are in heaven and on earth and under the earth — <sup>11</sup> and every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father."-Philippians 2:1-10



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)

#### Jesus mourned with those who mourned and showed Compassion:

**"Blessed are those who mourn,** for they will be comforted."-Matthew 5:4

**"Rejoice with those who rejoice; mourn with those who mourn."**-Romans 12:15

**"When Jesus saw her weeping, and the Jews who had come along with her also weeping, he was deeply moved in spirit . . ."**<sup>34</sup> "Where have you laid him?" he asked. "Come and see, Lord," they replied. <sup>35</sup> **Jesus wept.** <sup>36</sup> Then the Jews said, "See how he loved him!"-John 11:33-36

**"Jesus went through all the towns and villages, teaching in their synagogues, preaching the good news of the kingdom and healing every disease and sickness. <sup>36</sup> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion on them, because they were harassed and helpless, like sheep without a shepherd. <sup>37</sup> Then he said to his disciples, "The harvest is plentiful but the workers are few."**-Matthew 9:35-37

**"For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but we have one who has been tempted in every way, just as we are—yet was without sin."**-Hebrews 4:15

#### Jesus was Meek:

**"Blessed are the meek,** for they will inherit the earth."-Matthew 5:5

**"Come to me, all you who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest. <sup>29</sup> Take my yoke upon you and learn from me, for I am gentle [meek] and humble in heart, and you will find rest for your souls. <sup>30</sup> For my yoke is easy and my burden is light."**

-Matthew 11:28-30

#### Jesus Hungered and Thirsted for Kingdom Righteousness:

**"Blessed are those who hunger and thirst for righteousness,** for they will be filled."-Matthew 5:6

**"My food," said Jesus, "is to do the will of him who sent me and to finish his work."**-John 4:34

**"Jesus answered, "It is written: 'Man does not live on bread alone, but on every word that comes from the mouth of God.'"**-Matthew 4:4

**"Jesus answered her, "If you knew the gift of God and who it is that asks you for a drink, you would have asked Him and He would have given you living water."**-John 4:10

#### Jesus was merciful:

**"Blessed are the merciful,** for they will be shown mercy."-Matthew 5:7

**"When they came to the place called the Skull, there they crucified him,** along with the criminals—one on his right, the other on his left. <sup>34</sup> Jesus said, 'Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing.' And they divided up his clothes by casting lots. <sup>35</sup> The people stood watching, and the rulers even sneered at him. They said, 'He saved others; let him save himself if he is the Christ of God, the Chosen One.'"-Luke 23:33-35

#### Jesus was Pure in Heart:

**"Blessed are the pure in heart,** for they will see God."-Matthew 5:8

**"He committed no sin, and no deceit was found in his mouth."**-1 Peter 2:22





## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)

#### Jesus was a Peacemaker

**"Blessed are the peacemakers, for they will be called sons of God."**-Matthew 5:9

**"I have told you these things, so that in me you may have peace.** In this world you will have trouble. But take heart! I have overcome the world."**"**-John 16:33

#### Jesus was Persecuted for Kingdom Righteousness

**"Blessed are those who are persecuted because of righteousness, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven."**<sup>11</sup>

**Blessed are you when people insult you, persecute you and falsely say all kinds of evil against you because of me.**<sup>12</sup> Rejoice and be glad, because great is your reward in heaven, for in the same way they persecuted the prophets who were before you."**"**-Matthew 5:10-12

**"For I tell you that unless your righteousness surpasses that of the Pharisees and the teachers of the law, you will certainly not enter the kingdom of heaven."**-Matthew 5:20

**"If the world hates you, keep in mind that it hated me first."**<sup>19</sup> If you belonged to the world, it would love you as its own. As it is, you do not belong to the world, but I have chosen you out of the world. That is why the world hates you.<sup>20</sup> Remember the words I spoke to you: 'No servant is greater than his master.' **If they persecuted me, they will persecute you also.** If they obeyed my teaching, they will obey yours also.<sup>21</sup> **They will treat you this way because of my name, for they do not know the One who sent me.**<sup>22</sup> If I had not come and spoken to them, they would not be guilty of sin. Now, however, they have no excuse for their sin

<sup>23</sup> **He who hates me hates my Father as well.**<sup>24</sup> If I had not done among them what no one else did, they would not be guilty of sin. But now they have seen these miracles, and yet **they have hated both me and my Father.**<sup>25</sup> **But this is to fulfill what is written in their Law: 'They hated me without reason.'**"-John 15:18-25

**"But how is it to your credit if you receive a beating for doing wrong and endure it? But if you suffer for doing good and you endure it, this is commendable before God."**<sup>21</sup> To this you were called, because Christ suffered for you, leaving you an example, that you should follow in his steps.

<sup>22</sup> **"He committed no sin, and no deceit was found in his mouth."**

<sup>23</sup> **When they hurled their insults at him, he did not retaliate; when he suffered, he made no threats. Instead, he entrusted himself to him who judges justly.**<sup>24</sup> He himself bore our sins in his body on the tree, so that we might die to sins and live for righteousness; by his wound you have been healed.<sup>25</sup> For you were like sheep going astray, but now you have returned to the Shepherd and Overseer of your souls."**"**-1 Peter 2:20-25

#### Jesus was full of the Holy Spirit

**"Jesus, full of the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan and was led by the Spirit into the desert."**-Luke 4:1

**"At that time Jesus, full of joy through the Holy Spirit, said, "I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth . . ."**- Luke 10:21-24

#### Jesus bore the Fruit of the Spirit

**"But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness,<sup>23</sup> gentleness and self-control.** Against such things there is no law."**"**- Galatians 5:22-23

**"For you were once darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Live as children of light<sup>9</sup>(for the fruit of the light consists in all goodness, righteousness and truth)<sup>10</sup>and find out what pleases the Lord."**-Ephesians 5:8-9



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)

#### Jesus was filled with a Heavenly Attitude:

"Be **joyful always**, <sup>17</sup>**pray continually**; <sup>18</sup>**give thanks in all circumstances**, for this is God's will for you in Christ Jesus." - 2 Thessalonians 5:16-18 <sup>1</sup>

#### Jesus expressed Wisdom from Heaven:

"Who is wise and understanding among you? Let him show it by his good life, by deeds done in the humility that comes from wisdom. <sup>14</sup>But if you harbor bitter envy and selfish ambition in your hearts, do not boast about it or deny the truth. <sup>15</sup>Such "wisdom" does not come down from heaven but is earthly, unspiritual, of the devil. <sup>16</sup>For where you have envy and selfish ambition, there you find disorder and every evil practice. <sup>17</sup>But the **wisdom that comes from heaven is first of all pure; then peace-loving, considerate, submissive, full of mercy and good fruit, impartial and sincere**. <sup>18</sup>Peacemakers who sow in peace raise a harvest of righteousness."-James 3:13-18, (also see Luke 6:44-46)

#### Jesus lived in The Light:

"**God is light**; in him there is no darkness at all. If we claim to have fellowship with him yet walk in the darkness, we lie and do not live by the truth. But if we walk in the light, **as he is in the light**, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus, his Son, purifies us from all sin."-1 John 1:5-6

#### Jesus dwelled in the Kingdom of Heaven:

"The time has come," Jesus said. "**The kingdom of God is at hand**."-Mark 1:15

"Once, having been asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus replied, "The kingdom of God does not come with your careful observation, <sup>21</sup> nor will people say, 'Here it is,' or 'There it is,' **because the kingdom of God is within you**."-Luke 17:20-21

"Our Father in heaven, hallowed be your name, <sup>10</sup> **your kingdom come, your will be done on earth as it is in heaven**.'" -Matthew 6:9-10

#### Jesus was The Beloved Son of His Heavenly Father:

"When all the people were being baptized, Jesus was baptized too. And as he was praying, heaven was opened <sup>22</sup> and the Holy Spirit descended on him in bodily form like a dove. And a voice came from heaven: "**You are my Son, whom I love; with you I am well pleased**."-Luke 3:21-23

"Jesus took Peter, James and John with him and led them up a high mountain, where they were all alone. There he was transfigured before them. <sup>3</sup> His clothes became dazzling white, whiter than anyone in the world could bleach them. <sup>4</sup> And there appeared before them Elijah and Moses, who were talking with Jesus.

<sup>5</sup> Peter said to Jesus, "Rabbi, it is good for us to be here. Let us put up three shelters—one for you, one for Moses and one for Elijah." <sup>6</sup> (He did not know what to say, they were so frightened.)

<sup>7</sup> Then a cloud appeared and enveloped them, and a voice came from the cloud: "**This is my Son, whom I love. Listen to him!**"

<sup>8</sup> Suddenly, when they looked around, they no longer saw anyone with them except Jesus."-Mark 9:2-8

<sup>1</sup> Note: to be joyful is to give God the glory in all circumstances, it is more than just an emotion



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)

#### Jesus was nourished by His Relationship with His Heavenly Father

“**My food,**” said Jesus, **“is to do the will of him who sent me and to finish his work.”**-John 4:34

“The world must learn that **I love the Father and that I do exactly what my Father has commanded me.**”-John 14:31

“They did not understand that he was telling them about his Father. <sup>28</sup> So Jesus said, “When you have lifted up the Son of Man, then you will know that I am the one I claim to be and that **I do nothing on my own but speak just what the Father has taught me.** <sup>29</sup> **The one who sent me is with me; he has not left me alone, for I always do what pleases him.**”-John 8:27-29

#### Jesus Trusted Fully in His Heavenly Father and did not worry

“Father . . . <sup>4</sup> I have brought you glory on earth by completing the work you gave me to do.”-John 17:1a, 4

“Therefore I tell you, **do not worry** about your life, what you will eat or drink; or about your body, what you will wear. Is not life more important than food, and the body more important than clothes? <sup>26</sup> Look at the birds of the air; they do not sow or reap or store away in barns, and **yet your heavenly Father feeds them.** Are you not much more valuable than they? <sup>27</sup> Who of you by worrying can add a single hour to his life?

<sup>28</sup> “And why do you worry about clothes? See how the lilies of the field grow. They do not labor or spin. <sup>29</sup> Yet I tell you that not even Solomon in all his splendor was dressed like one of these. <sup>30</sup> If that is how God clothes the grass of the field, which is here today and tomorrow is thrown into the fire, will he not much more clothe you, O you of little faith? <sup>31</sup> So do not worry, saying, ‘What shall we eat?’ or ‘What shall we drink?’ or ‘What shall we wear?’ <sup>32</sup> For the pagans run after all these things, and **your heavenly Father knows that you need them.** <sup>33</sup> But seek first his kingdom and his righteousness, and all these things will be given to you as well. <sup>34</sup> Therefore do not worry about tomorrow, for tomorrow will worry about itself. Each day has enough trouble of its own.”-Matthew 6:25-34

#### Jesus did everything in Relationship with His Heavenly Father

“Jesus gave them this answer: “I tell you the truth, the Son can do nothing by himself; **he can do only what he sees his Father doing,** because whatever the Father does the Son also does. For the Father loves this Son and shows him all he does.”- John 5:19-20a

“If anyone speaks, he should do it **as one speaking the very words of God.** If anyone serves, he should do it **with the strength God provides, so that in all things God may be praised through Jesus Christ. To him be the glory** and the power for ever and ever. Amen.”-1 Peter 4:11

#### Jesus did everything in His Heavenly Father’s Timing

“Therefore Jesus told them, **“The right time for me has not yet come;** for you any time is right . . . <sup>8</sup> You go to the Feast. I am not yet going up to the Feast, **because for me the right time has not yet come.”** <sup>9</sup> Having said this, he stayed in Galilee.”-John 7:6,8-9

#### Jesus was honest with His Heavenly Father

“Jesus went out as usual to the Mount of Olives, and his disciples followed him. <sup>40</sup> On reaching the place, he said to them, “Pray that you will not fall into temptation.” <sup>41</sup> He withdrew about a stone’s throw beyond them, knelt down and prayed, <sup>42</sup> “Father, if you are willing, take this cup from me; yet not my will, but yours be done.” <sup>43</sup> An angel from heaven appeared to him and strengthened him. <sup>44</sup> And being in anguish, he prayed more earnestly, and his sweat was like drops of blood falling to the ground.”-Luke 22:39-44



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)

#### Jesus is The Way, The Truth, & The Life and Perfectly Reflected the Manifest Character of His Father

"Jesus answered, **"I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me. <sup>7</sup> If you really knew me, you would know my Father as well. From now on, you do know him and have seen him."**

<sup>8</sup> Philip said, "Lord, show us the Father and that will be enough for us." <sup>9</sup> Jesus answered: "Don't you know me, Philip, even after I have been among you such a long time? **Anyone who has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, 'Show us the Father'? <sup>10</sup> Don't you believe that **I am in the Father, and that the Father is in me?** The words I say to you are not just my own. Rather, it is the Father, living in me, who is doing his work. <sup>11</sup> **Believe me when I say that I am in the Father and the Father is in me;** or at least believe on the evidence of the miracles themselves. <sup>12</sup> I tell you the truth, anyone who has faith in me will do what I have been doing. He will do even greater things than these, because I am going to the Father. <sup>13</sup> And I will do whatever you ask in my name, so that the Son may bring glory to the Father. <sup>14</sup> You may ask me for anything in my name, and I will do it." -John 14:6-14

#### Jesus was The Suffering Servant that was prophesied in the Scriptures

"See, my servant will act wisely; he will be raised and lifted up and highly exalted. <sup>14</sup> Just as there were many who were appalled at him— his appearance was so disfigured beyond that of any man and his form marred beyond human likeness—

<sup>15</sup> so will he sprinkle many nations, and kings will shut their mouths because of him. For what they were not told, they will see, and what they have not heard, they will understand.

<sup>1</sup> Who has believed our message and to whom has the arm of Yahweh been revealed?

<sup>2</sup> He grew up before him like a tender shoot, and like a root out of dry ground. He had no beauty or majesty to attract us to him, nothing in his appearance that we should desire him.

<sup>3</sup> He was despised and rejected by men, a man of sorrows, and familiar with suffering. Like one from whom men hide their faces he was despised, and we esteemed him not. <sup>4</sup> Surely he took up our infirmities and carried our sorrows, yet we considered him stricken by God, smitten by him, and afflicted. <sup>5</sup> But he was pierced for our transgressions, he was crushed for our iniquities;

the punishment that brought us peace was upon him, and by his wounds we are healed.

<sup>6</sup> We all, like sheep, have gone astray, each of us has turned to his own way; and Yahweh has laid on him the iniquity of us all.

<sup>7</sup> He was oppressed and afflicted, yet he did not open his mouth; he was led like a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is silent, so he did not open his mouth. <sup>8</sup> By oppression and judgment he was taken away. And who can speak of his descendants? For he was cut off from the land of the living; for the transgression of my people he was stricken.

<sup>9</sup> He was assigned a grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death, though he had done no violence, nor was any deceit in his mouth. <sup>10</sup> Yet it was Yahweh's will to crush him and cause him to suffer, and though Yahweh makes his life a guilt offering,

he will see his offspring and prolong his days, and the will of Yahweh will prosper in his hand.

<sup>11</sup> After the suffering of his soul, he will see the light of life and be satisfied; by his knowledge my righteous servant will justify many, and he will bear their iniquities. <sup>12</sup> Therefore I will give him a portion among the great, and he will divide the spoils with the strong, because he poured out his life unto death, and was numbered with the transgressors.

For he bore the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors." -Isaiah 52:13-53:12



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)

#### Jesus was a Servant Leader

"Jesus called them together and said, " You know that those who are regarded as rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them, and their high officials exercise authority over them. <sup>43</sup>Not so with you. Instead, whoever wants to become great among you must be your servant, <sup>44</sup>and whoever wants to be first must be slave of all. <sup>45</sup>For even **the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many.**"-Mark 10:42-45

#### Jesus Considered Others Better than Himself

"If you have any encouragement from **being united with Christ, if any comfort from his love, if any fellowship with the Spirit, if any tenderness and compassion,** <sup>2</sup>then make my joy complete by being like-minded, having the same love, being one in spirit and purpose. <sup>3</sup>**Do nothing out of selfish ambition or vain conceit, but in humility consider others better than yourselves.** <sup>4</sup>**Each of you should look not only to your own interests, but also to the interests of others.**

<sup>5</sup>**Your attitude should be the same as that of Christ Jesus**"-Philippians 2:1-5

#### Jesus was full of The Grace and The Truth

"The Word became flesh and made his dwelling among us. We have seen his glory, the glory of the One and Only, who came from the Father, **full of grace and truth.**"-John 1:14

"From **the fullness of his grace we have all received one blessing after another.** <sup>17</sup> For the Law was given through Moses; the **Grace and the Truth came through Jesus Christ.** <sup>18</sup> No one has ever seen God, but **God the One and Only, who is** at the Father's side, has made him known."-John 1:16-18

"Jesus answered, "My teaching is not my own. It comes from him who sent me. <sup>17</sup>If anyone chooses to do Gods will, he will find out whether **my teaching comes from God** or whether I speak on my own. <sup>18</sup>He who speaks on his own does so to gain honor for himself, but he who works for the honor of the on who sent him is **a man of truth**; there is nothing false about him."-John 7:16-18

"Jesus answered . . . "I came into the world, **to testify to the Truth. Everyone on the side of truth listens to me.**"-John 18:37

#### Jesus taught the Whole Counsel of God

"And beginning with Moses and all the Prophets, he explained to them what **was said in all the Scriptures** concerning Himself."-Luke 24:27

#### Jesus is the true vine that enables us to bear the fruit of the Holy Spirit

"No branch can bear fruit by itself; it must remain in the vine. Neither can you bear fruit unless you remain in me. I am the vine; you are the branches. If a man remains in me and I in him, he will bear much fruit; apart from me you can do nothing."-Jesus, John 15:5





## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)

#### Jesus is Brilliant, used logic perfectly, is the Living Word/Logos/Logic, Spoke with Authority, and is Perfect Wisdom

"They arrived again in Jerusalem, and while Jesus was walking in the temple courts, the chief priests, the teachers of the law and the elders came to him. <sup>28</sup> "By what authority are you doing these things?" they asked. "And who gave you authority to do this?" <sup>29</sup> Jesus replied, **"I will ask you one question. Answer me, and I will tell you by what authority I am doing these things."** <sup>30</sup> **John's baptism—was it from heaven, or from men? Tell me!"** <sup>31</sup> They discussed it among themselves and said, "If we say, 'From heaven,' he will ask, 'Then why didn't you believe him?'" <sup>32</sup> But if we say, 'From men'..." (They feared the people, for everyone held that John really was a prophet.) <sup>33</sup> So they answered Jesus, "We don't know." Jesus said, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I am doing these things."-Mark 11:27-33

"In the beginning was **the Word [Logos/Logic]**, and **the Word was with God**, and **the Word was God**."-John 1:1

"When **he was twelve years old**, they went up to the Feast, according to the custom. <sup>43</sup> After the Feast was over, while his parents were returning home, the boy Jesus stayed behind in Jerusalem, but they were unaware of it. <sup>44</sup> Thinking he was in their company, they traveled on for a day. Then they began looking for him among their relatives and friends. <sup>45</sup> When they did not find him, they went back to Jerusalem to look for him. <sup>46</sup> After three days they found him in the temple courts, sitting among the teachers, listening to them and asking them questions. <sup>47</sup> **Everyone who heard him was amazed at his understanding and his answers.**"-Luke 2:42-47

"Again Jesus said, "Simon son of John, do you truly love me?" He answered, "Yes, Lord, you know that I love you." Jesus said, "Take care of my sheep." <sup>17</sup> The third time he said to him, "Simon son of John, do you love me?" Peter was hurt because Jesus asked him the third time, "Do you love me?" He said, **"Lord, you know all things;** you know that I love you." Jesus said, "Feed my sheep. <sup>18</sup> I tell you the truth, when you were younger you dressed yourself and went where you wanted; but when you are old you will stretch out your hands, and someone else will dress you and lead you where you do not want to go."-John 21:16-18

"Immediately **Jesus knew in his spirit** that this was what they were thinking in their hearts, and he said to them, "Why are you thinking these things?"-Mark 2:8

"But that you may know that the Son of Man **has authority on earth to forgive sins...**" He said to the paralyzed man, "I tell you, get up, take your mat and go home."-Luke 5:24

**"Therefore everyone who hears these words of mine and puts them into practice is like a wise man** who built his house on the rock. <sup>25</sup> The rain came down, the streams rose, and the winds blew and beat against that house; yet it did not fall, because it had its foundation on the rock. <sup>26</sup> But everyone who hears these words of mine and does not put them into practice is like a foolish man who built his house on sand. <sup>27</sup> The rain came down, the streams rose, and the winds blew and beat against that house, and it fell with a great crash."

<sup>28</sup> When Jesus had finished saying these things, the crowds were amazed at his teaching, <sup>29</sup> **because he taught as one who had authority, and not as their teachers of the law.**"-Matthew 7:24-30 (see also Mark 1:22, Luke 4:32, Luke 4:36)



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)

#### Jesus was a prayer warrior and is our intercessor

"During the days of Jesus' life on earth, **he offered up prayers and petitions with loud cries and tears** to the one who could save him from death, and **he was heard because of his reverent submission**. Although he was a son, he learned obedience from what he suffered and, once made perfect, he became the source of eternal salvation for all who obey him and was designated by God to be high priest in the order of Melchizedek.'" - Hebrews 4:7-10

"In the early morning, while it was still dark, **Jesus got up, left the house, and went away to a secluded place, and was praying there.**"-Mark 1:35

"**Jesus went out to a mountainside to pray, and spent the night praying to God.** When morning came, he called his disciples to him and chose twelve of them, whom he also designated apostles.'" - Luke 6:12b-13

"Once when **Jesus was praying in private and his disciples were with him**, he asked them, "Who do the crowds say I am?" - Luke 9:18

"One day **Jesus was praying in a certain place**. When he finished, one of his disciples said to him, "**Lord, teach us to pray**, just as John taught his disciples."

<sup>2</sup> He said to them, "When you pray, say:

"Father, hallowed be your name, your kingdom come.

<sup>3</sup> Give us each day our daily bread.

<sup>4</sup> Forgive us our sins, for we also forgive everyone who sins against us.

And lead us not into temptation."

<sup>5</sup> Then he said to them, "Suppose one of you has a friend, and he goes to him at midnight and says, 'Friend, lend me three loaves of bread,' <sup>6</sup> because a friend of mine on a journey has come to me, and I have nothing to set before him.'

<sup>7</sup> "Then the one inside answers, 'Don't bother me. The door is already locked, and my children are with me in bed. I can't get up and give you anything.' <sup>8</sup> I tell you, though he will not get up and give him the bread because he is his friend, yet because of the man's boldness he will get up and give him as much as he needs.

<sup>9</sup> "So I say to you: Ask and it will be given to you; seek and you will find; knock and the door will be opened to you. <sup>10</sup> For everyone who asks receives; he who seeks finds; and to him who knocks, the door will be opened.

<sup>11</sup> "Which of you fathers, if your son asks for a fish, will give him a snake instead? <sup>12</sup> Or if he asks for an egg, will give him a scorpion? <sup>13</sup> **If you then, though you are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him!**" - Luke 11:1-13

"**Then Jesus was led by the Spirit** into the desert to be tempted by the devil. <sup>2</sup> **After fasting forty days and forty nights, he was hungry.**" - Matthew 4:1-2

"Therefore he is able to save completely those who come to God through him, because **he always lives to intercede for them.**" - Hebrews 7:25

"**Christ Jesus**, who died—more than that, who was raised to life—is at the right hand of God and **is also interceding for us.**" - Romans 8:34

"For he bore the sin of many, and **made intercession for the transgressors.**" - Isaiah 53:12

#### Jesus took time to Rest:

"Then he got into the boat and his disciples followed him. <sup>24</sup> Without warning, a furious storm came up on the lake, so that the waves swept over the boat. But **Jesus was sleeping.** <sup>25</sup> The disciples went and woke him, saying, "Lord, save us! We're going to drown!" <sup>26</sup> He replied, "You of little faith, why are you so afraid?" Then he got up and rebuked the winds and the waves, and it was completely calm. <sup>27</sup> The men were amazed and asked, "What kind of man is this? Even the winds and the waves obey him!" - Matthew 8:23-27



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)

**Jesus was a man and was strong and courageous, is all-powerful, and was willingly sacrificial:**

"Jesus said to him, "Away from me, Satan! For it is written: 'Worship the Lord your God, and serve him only.'"

-Matthew 4:10

"Then he entered the temple area and **began driving out** those who were selling. <sup>46</sup> "It is written," he said to them, "'My house will be a house of prayer'; but you have made it 'a den of robbers.'"

<sup>47</sup> Every day he was teaching at the temple. But the chief priests, the teachers of the law and the leaders among the people were trying to kill him."-Luke 19:45-47

"Therefore Jesus said again, "I tell you the truth, I am the gate for the sheep. <sup>8</sup> All who ever came before me were thieves and robbers, but the sheep did not listen to them. <sup>9</sup> I am the gate; whoever enters through me will be saved. He will come in and go out, and find pasture. <sup>10</sup> The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy; I have come that they may have life, and have it to the full. <sup>11</sup> **"I am the good shepherd. The good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep.** <sup>12</sup> The hired hand is not the shepherd who owns the sheep. So when he sees the wolf coming, he abandons the sheep and runs away. Then the wolf attacks the flock and scatters it. <sup>13</sup> The man runs away because he is a hired hand and cares nothing for the sheep. <sup>14</sup> **"I am the good shepherd; I know my sheep and my sheep know me—** <sup>15</sup> just as the Father knows me and I know the Father—and **I lay down my life for the sheep.** <sup>16</sup> I have other sheep that are not of this sheep pen. I must bring them also. They too will listen to my voice, and there shall be one flock and one shepherd. <sup>17</sup> The reason my Father loves me is that I lay down my life—only to take it up again. <sup>18</sup> **No one takes it from me, but I lay it down of my own accord.** I have authority to lay it down and authority to take it up again. This command I received from my Father."-John 10:7-18

**"He poured out his life unto death,** and was numbered with the transgressors."-Isaiah 53:12

"Let us fix our eyes on Jesus, the author and perfecter of our faith, who for the joy set before him **endured the cross, scorning its shame,** and sat down at the right hand of the throne of God."-Hebrews 12:2

"He got up, rebuked the wind and said to the waves, **"Quiet! Be still!"** Then the wind died down [immediately] and **it was completely calm.** <sup>40</sup> He said to his disciples, "Why are you so afraid? Do you still have no faith?"

<sup>41</sup> They were terrified and asked each other, **"Who is this? Even the wind and the waves obey him!"**-Mark 4:39-41

"They went across the lake to the region of the Gerasenes. <sup>2</sup> When Jesus got out of the boat, a man with an evil spirit came from the tombs to meet him. <sup>3</sup> **This man lived in the tombs, and no one could bind him any more, not even with a chain.** <sup>4</sup> **For he had often been chained hand and foot, but he tore the chains apart and broke the irons on his feet. No one was strong enough to subdue him.** <sup>5</sup> Night and day among the tombs and in the hills he would cry out and cut himself with stones.

<sup>6</sup> **When he saw Jesus from a distance, he ran and fell on his knees in front of him.** <sup>7</sup> He shouted at the top of his voice, "What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? Swear to God that you won't torture me!"

<sup>8</sup> For Jesus had said to him, "Come out of this man, you evil spirit!"

<sup>9</sup> Then Jesus asked him, "What is your name?"

"My name is Legion," he replied, "for we are many." <sup>10</sup> And he begged Jesus again and again not to send them out of the area.

<sup>11</sup> A large herd of pigs was feeding on the nearby hillside. <sup>12</sup> The demons begged Jesus, "Send us among the pigs; allow us to go into them." <sup>13</sup> **He gave them permission, and the evil spirits came out and went into the pigs.**

The herd, about two thousand in number, rushed down the steep bank into the lake and were drowned."-Mark 5:1-13



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)

#### Jesus makes you “dead to sin” and dead to the law” once and for all

“What shall we say then? Are we to continue in sin so that grace may increase? <sup>2</sup> May it never be! How shall we who died to sin still live in it? <sup>3</sup> Or do you not know that **all of us who have been baptized into Christ Jesus have been baptized into His death?** <sup>4</sup> **Therefore we have been buried with Him through baptism into death, so that as Christ was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, so we too might walk in newness of life.** <sup>5</sup> **For if we have become united with Him in the likeness of His death, certainly we shall also be in the likeness of His resurrection,** <sup>6</sup> **knowing this, that our old self was crucified with Him, in order that our body of sin might be done away with, so that we would no longer be slaves to sin;** <sup>7</sup> **for he who has died is freed from sin.** <sup>8</sup> Now if we have died with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with Him, <sup>9</sup> knowing that Christ, having been raised from the dead, is never to die again; death no longer is master over Him. <sup>10</sup> **For the death that He died, He died to sin once for all; but the life that He lives, He lives to God.** <sup>11</sup> **Even so consider yourselves to be dead to sin, but alive to God in Christ Jesus.** <sup>12</sup> Therefore do not let sin reign in your mortal body so that you obey its lusts, <sup>13</sup> and do not go on presenting the members of your body to sin as instruments of unrighteousness; but present yourselves to God as those alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness to God. <sup>14</sup> For sin shall not be master over you, for you are not under law but under grace. <sup>15</sup> What then? Shall we sin because we are not under law but under grace? May it never be! <sup>16</sup> Do you not know that when you present yourselves to someone as slaves for obedience, you are slaves of the one whom you obey, either of sin resulting in death, or of obedience resulting in righteousness? <sup>17</sup> But thanks be to God that though you were slaves of sin, you became obedient from the heart to that form of teaching to which you were committed, <sup>18</sup> and having been freed from sin, you became slaves of righteousness. <sup>19</sup> I am speaking in human terms because of the weakness of your flesh. For just as you presented your members as slaves to impurity and to lawlessness, resulting in further lawlessness, so now present your members as slaves to righteousness, resulting in sanctification.

<sup>20</sup> For when you were slaves of sin, you were free in regard to righteousness. <sup>21</sup> Therefore what benefit were you then deriving from the things of which you are now ashamed? For the outcome of those things is death. <sup>22</sup> **But now having been freed from sin and enslaved to God, you derive your benefit, resulting in sanctification, and the outcome, eternal life.** <sup>23</sup> For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.”-Romans 6:1-23

“Or do you not know, brethren (for I am speaking to those who know the law), that the law has jurisdiction over a person as long as he lives? <sup>2</sup> For the married woman is bound by law to her husband while he is living; but **if her husband dies**, she is released from the law concerning the husband. <sup>3</sup> So then, if while her husband is living she is joined to another man, she shall be called an adulteress; but **if her husband dies, she is free from the law**, so that she is not an adulteress though she is joined to another man.

<sup>4</sup> Therefore, my brethren, **you also were made to die to the Law through the body of Christ, so that you might be joined to another**, to Him who was raised from the dead, in order that we might bear fruit for God. <sup>5</sup> For while we were in the flesh, the sinful passions, which were *aroused* by the Law, were at work in the members of our body to bear fruit for death. <sup>6</sup> **But now we have been released from the Law, having died to that by which we were bound, so that we serve in newness of the Spirit** and not in oldness of the letter.”-Romans 7:1-6



## Section 1.2.1 - Jesus Christ is The Good News



### Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)

#### Jesus is Alive in Me and I am a New Creation:

"For through the Law I died to the Law, so that I might live to God. <sup>20</sup> I have been crucified with Christ; and it is no longer I who lives, but Christ lives in me; and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself up for me. <sup>21</sup> I do not nullify the grace of God, for if righteousness comes through the Law, then Christ died needlessly."-Galatians 2:19-21

"Therefore if you have been raised up with Christ, keep seeking the things above, where Christ is, seated at the right hand of God. <sup>2</sup> Set your mind on the things above, not on the things that are on earth. <sup>3</sup> For you have died and your life is hidden with Christ in God. <sup>4</sup> When Christ, who is our life, is revealed, then you also will be revealed with Him in glory."-Colossians 3:1-3

"Therefore from now on we recognize no one according to the flesh; even though we have known Christ according to the flesh, yet now we know Him in this way no longer. <sup>17</sup> Therefore if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; the old things passed away; behold, new things have come. <sup>18</sup> Now all these things are from God, who reconciled us to Himself through Christ and gave us the ministry of reconciliation, <sup>19</sup> namely, that God was in Christ reconciling the world to Himself, not counting their trespasses against them, and He has committed to us the word of reconciliation."-2 Corinthians 5:16-19

#### Jesus gives Perfect Freedom:

"It was for freedom that Christ set us free; therefore keep standing firm and do not be subject again to a yoke of slavery."-Galatians 5:1-3

#### Jesus Christ is the Savior

"Therefore do not be ashamed of the testimony of our Lord or of me His prisoner, but join with me in suffering for the gospel according to the power of God, <sup>9</sup> who has saved us and called us with a holy calling, not according to our works, but according to His own purpose and grace which was granted us in Christ Jesus from all eternity, <sup>10</sup> but now has been revealed by the appearing of our Savior Christ Jesus, who abolished death and brought life and immortality to light through the gospel, <sup>11</sup> for which I was appointed a preacher and an apostle and a teacher."-2 Timothy 1:8-11

"Looking for the blessed hope and the appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior, Christ Jesus"-Titus 2:13

"Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior."-Titus 1:4

"For there is One God and One mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus, who gave himself as a ransom for all men—the testimony given in its proper time."-1 Timothy 2:5-6

"Simon Peter, a bond-servant and apostle of Jesus Christ, to those who have received a faith of the same kind as ours, by the righteousness of our God and Savior, Jesus Christ."-2 Peter 1:1

#### Jesus Christ is the Lord

"Grace and peace be multiplied to you in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord; <sup>3</sup> seeing that His divine power has granted to us everything pertaining to life and godliness, through the true knowledge of Him who called us by His own glory and excellence."-2 Peter 1:2-3

"for in this way the entrance into the eternal kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ will be abundantly supplied to you."-2 Peter 1:11





**Jesus Christ is both fully God and the perfect human (continued)**

**Jesus Christ is the King**

“And on His robe and on His thigh He has a name written, “**KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS.**”

-Revelation 19:16

“**Now to the King eternal**, immortal, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory forever and ever. Amen.”

-1 Timothy 1:17

“He who is the blessed and **only Sovereign, the King of kings** and Lord of lords, <sup>16</sup> who alone possesses immortality and dwells in unapproachable light, whom no man has seen or can see. To Him be honor and eternal dominion! Amen”

-1 Timothy 6:15b-16

“Great and marvelous are Your works, O Lord God, the Almighty; righteous and true are Your ways,

**King of the nations!”**

-Revelation 15:3

## What is the Christian life about?

***It is only through Jesus Christ! Jesus' Method. Jesus' Motivation. Jesus' Mission.***



Feeding  
Trough,  
Cross,  
Empty  
Tomb,  
Crown,  
Only  
Way

**It is only through Jesus Christ! He is both fully God and the perfect human. Jesus Christ is *The Good News* - The Savior King - born of a virgin, died for our sins on the cross, buried in a tomb, and resurrected on the third day.**

**"The time has come," Jesus said.**

**"The kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the good news!" - Mark 1:15**

**"I am The Way, and The Truth, and The Life;  
no one comes to the Father but through Me."**

**- Jesus, John 14:6**



Yoke,  
Clean  
Water

### **Jesus' Method:**

**Come to Jesus. Be Yoked to Jesus. Learn from Jesus through God's Word.**

**"Come to Me,**

**all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest.**

**Take My Yoke upon you**

**and**

**Learn from Me,**

**for I am gentle and humble in heart,**

**and you will find rest for your souls.**

**For My Yoke is easy and My burden is light."**

**- Jesus, Matthew 11:28-30**

**"Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth; Your Word is Truth." - Jesus, John 17:17**



Compass

### **Jesus' Motivation:**

**Love the LORD and others as Jesus did.**

**(a) Love the LORD: "Love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength." - Jesus, Mark 12:30**

**(b) Love the Church: "Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another. By this all men will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another." - Jesus, John 13:34-35**

**(c) Love your neighbor: "Love your neighbor as yourself." - Jesus, Matthew 22:39**

**(d) Love your enemies: "Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you." - Jesus, Luke 6:27-28**

**(e) By obeying God's Word: "If you love Me, you will keep My commandments. And I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Counselor [the Holy Spirit] to be with you forever. He is the Spirit of Truth. The world is unable to receive Him because it doesn't see Him or know Him. But you do know Him, because He remains with you and will be in you." - Jesus, John 14:15-17**



Lifebuoy

### **Jesus' Mission:**

**Make disciples of Jesus that make disciples of Jesus  
(in the home, in the church, and in the world).**

**"All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.**

**Go, therefore, make disciples from all the nations,**

**[note: the first step in making disciples is sharing the good news]**

**baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,**

**teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.**

**And behold, I am with you always, to the very end of the age."**

**- Jesus, Matthew 28:18-20**



## Section 2 – Jesus' Method



**Jesus' Method:**  
**Come to Jesus.**  
**Be Yoked to Jesus.**  
**Learn from Jesus through God's Word.**



**The above memory aid represents:**

### **A Yoke for Pulling a Load**

**"Come to Me,**  
**all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest.**  
**Take My Yoke upon you**  
**and**  
**Learn from Me,**  
**for I am gentle and humble in heart,**  
**and you will find rest for your souls.**  
**For My Yoke is easy and My burden is light."**  
**- Jesus, Matthew 11:28-30**

### **With Clean Water:**

**"Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth;**  
**Your Word is Truth." - Jesus, John 17:17**



Intentionally Remember – Matthew 11:28-30

**“Come to me,  
all who are weary  
and burdened, and  
I will give you rest.  
Take My yoke upon you  
and learn from Me,  
for I am gentle  
and humble in heart,  
and you will find  
rest for your souls.  
For My yoke is easy and  
My burden is light.”**

**- Jesus, Matthew 11:28-30**



## Section 2.1.1 – Jesus’ Method – Put Off and Put On



### Put Off and Put On:

## The Scriptural Process of Transformation by The Grace and Power of God

**“Come to Me** [turn away from yourself/repent/put off your yoke],

all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest.

**Take My yoke upon you** [turn and trust in Jesus/submit to Jesus as Lord/put on Jesus’ yoke]

and **Learn from Me** [walk in Jesus],

for I am gentle and humble in heart, and you will find rest for your souls.

For My yoke is easy and my burden is light.” -Jesus, Matthew 11:28-30

“Just as you received Christ Jesus as Lord [through repentance (put off) and trust (put on)],  
continue to walk in Him”-Col 2:6

**How this process of putting off and putting on is described in other places in the Scriptures:**

	<b><u>Renew Mind</u></b> “Being renewed in the spirit [disposition/attitude] of your minds” -Ephesians 4:23	
<b><u>Put Off</u></b> “You <u>put off</u> your former way of life, the old self that is corrupted by deceitful desires” -Ephesians 4:22	“We take captive every thought to make it obedient to Christ.” -2 Corinthians 10:5 “Be transformed by the renewing of your mind. Then you will be able to test and approve what God’s will is—His good, pleasing and perfect will.” -Romans 12:2 “Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by The Truth; Your Word is Truth.” -Jesus, John 17:15-17	<b><u>Put On</u></b> “You <u>put on</u> the new self, the one created according to God’s likeness in righteousness and purity of the truth.” -Ephesians 4:24
-Put Off lying (in both your mind and in your words)  -Put Off stealing  -Put Off speaking foul language  -Put Off bitterness, anger, wrath, shouting, slander, malice, and abusive speech  -Put Off anxiety	“Since you put away lying, speak the truth, each one to his neighbor, because we are members of one another. <sup>26</sup> Be angry and do not sin. Don’t let the sun go down on your anger, <sup>27</sup> and don’t give the Devil an opportunity. <sup>28</sup> The thief must no longer steal. Instead, he must do honest work with his own hands, so that he has something to share with anyone in need. <sup>29</sup> No foul language is to come from your mouth, but only what is good for building up someone in need, so that it gives grace to those who hear. <sup>30</sup> And don’t grieve God’s Holy Spirit. You were sealed by Him for the day of redemption. <sup>31</sup> All bitterness, anger and wrath, shouting and slander must be removed from you, along with all malice. <sup>32</sup> And be kind and compassionate to one another, forgiving one another, just as God also forgave you in Christ.” -Ephesians 4:25-32 “But now you also, put them all aside: anger, wrath, malice, slander, and abusive speech from your mouth. <sup>9</sup> Do not lie to one another, since you laid aside the old self with its evil practices, <sup>10</sup> and have put on the new self who is being renewed to a true knowledge according to the image of the One who created him . . . <sup>12</sup> So, as those who have been chosen of God, holy and beloved, put on heart of compassion, kindness, humility, gentleness and patience; <sup>13</sup> bearing with one another, and forgiving each other, whoever has a complaint against anyone; just as the Lord forgave you, so also should you. <sup>14</sup> Beyond all these things put on love, which is the perfect bond of unity. <sup>15</sup> Let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts, to which indeed you were called in one body; and be thankful.” -Colossians 3:1-10,12-15  “Be anxious for nothing [imperative command – meaning do this!], but in everything by prayer and supplication, with thanksgiving, let your requests be made known to God; and the peace of God, which surpasses all understanding, will guard your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus” -Philippians 4:6-8	-Put On speaking the truth (in both your mind and in your words)  -Put On honest work to be able to give  -Put On only what is good for building up someone in need, so that it gives grace to those who hear  -Put On compassion and forgiving as Christ forgave you -Put On kindness, humility, gentleness and patience -Put On bearing with one another, and forgiving each other, whoever has a complaint against anyone; just as the Lord forgave you -Put On love -Put On letting the peace of Christ rule in your heart -Put On being thankful  -Put On prayer and supplication, with thanksgiving, let your requests be made known to God





## Section 2.1.1 – Jesus’ Method – Put Off and Put On



### Walk in Jesus – Living Out The New Identity in Christ - Put Off and Put On

<sup>17</sup> Therefore, I say this and testify in the Lord: **You should no longer walk as the Gentiles walk, in the futility of their minds.** <sup>18</sup> They are darkened in their understanding, **excluded** from the life of God, because of the ignorance that is in them and because of the hardness of their hearts. <sup>19</sup> They became **callous** and gave themselves over to promiscuity for the practice of every kind of impurity with a desire for more and more. <sup>20</sup> But that is not how you learned about the Christ, <sup>21</sup> assuming you heard about Him and were **taught in Him**, because **the truth is in Jesus.** <sup>22</sup> **You put off your former way of life, the old self that is corrupted by deceitful desires;** <sup>23</sup> **you are being renewed in the spirit of your minds;** <sup>24</sup> **you put on the new self, the one created according to God’s likeness in righteousness and purity of the truth.**

<sup>25</sup> Since you put away lying, speak the truth, each one to his neighbor, because we are members of one another. <sup>26</sup> Be angry and do not sin. Don’t let the sun go down on your anger, <sup>27</sup> and don’t give the Devil an opportunity. <sup>28</sup> The thief must no longer steal. Instead, he must do honest work with his own hands, so that he has something to share with anyone in need. <sup>29</sup> No foul language is to come from your mouth, but only what is good for building up someone in need, so that it gives grace to those who hear. <sup>30</sup> And don’t grieve God’s Holy Spirit. You were sealed by Him for the day of redemption. <sup>31</sup> All bitterness, anger and wrath, shouting and slander must be removed from you, along with all malice. <sup>32</sup> And be kind and compassionate to one another, forgiving one another, just as God also forgave you in Christ. **5 Therefore, be imitators of God, as dearly loved children; <sup>2</sup> and walk in love, as the Christ also loved us and gave Himself up for us as an offering and sacrifice to God.** <sup>3</sup> But sexual immorality and any impurity or greed should not even be heard of among you, as is proper for saints. <sup>4</sup> Coarse and foolish talking or crude joking are not suitable, but rather giving thanks. <sup>5</sup> For know and recognize this: Every sexually immoral or impure or greedy person, who is an idolater, does not have an inheritance in the kingdom of the Messiah and of God.

<sup>6</sup> Let no one deceive you with empty arguments, for God’s wrath is coming on the disobedient because of these things. <sup>7</sup> Therefore, do not become their partners. <sup>8</sup> **For you were once darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light— <sup>9</sup> for the fruit of the light results in all goodness, righteousness, and truth—** <sup>10</sup> discerning what is pleasing to the Lord. <sup>11</sup> Don’t participate in the fruitless works of darkness, but instead expose them. <sup>12</sup> For it is shameful even to mention what is done by them in secret. <sup>13</sup> Everything exposed by the light is made clear, <sup>14</sup> for what makes everything clear is light. Therefore it is said: Get up, sleeper, and rise up from the dead, and the Messiah will shine on you.

<sup>15</sup> **Pay careful attention, then, to how you walk—not as unwise people but as wise—** <sup>16</sup> making the most of the time, because the days are evil. <sup>17</sup> So don’t be foolish, but understand what the Lord’s will is. <sup>18</sup> And don’t get drunk with wine, which leads to reckless actions, but be filled by the Spirit:

<sup>19</sup> speaking to one another  
in psalms, hymns, and spiritual songs,  
singing and making music  
from your heart to the Lord,  
<sup>20</sup> giving thanks always for everything  
to God the Father  
in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ,  
<sup>21</sup> submitting to one another  
in the fear of Christ.

-Ephesians 4:17-5:21 (see also Colossians 3:1-17 and Romans 13:9-14)

NOTE: 1) Our past *does NOT* cause us to act in the present and our desires and emotions *do NOT* cause us to act in the present. Our past and our desires/emotions can influence us but *do NOT* cause us to act (1 Cor. 10:13). We sin because we choose to sin. 2) We are new creations in Christ (2 Cor. 5:17, Rom.6:11) therefore, sin *is NOT* our Master—the Lord Jesus is our Master. 3) It is God who reveals our sin and convicts us of sin—*NOT* ourselves (Ps.139:23-34, Heb.4:12-13).

By the grace and power of the Holy Spirit, choose the truth which is *in* Jesus. “I have chosen the way of truth” (Psalm 119:30). A choice by the grace and power of the Holy Spirit involves your mind and will and then later the affections/emotions/desires/passions will follow. “Just as you received Christ Jesus as Lord, continue to walk in Him” (Col.2:6). How did you receive Christ as Lord? Through repentance (putting off) and trust (putting on). Therefore, by the grace and power of the Holy Spirit, turn from your sin and trust in Jesus throughout the day.

#### Three Helpful Analogies from the Scripture of How We are Transformed Put Off, Renew Mind, Put On

You choose (an act of the mind and will) to Put Off old worn out, filthy, gross, and disgusting clothing and throw them in the trash.

Put Off the deceitful desires.

Example: Lord Jesus, I repent/turn from my lies and deceit.

You choose to shower with soap to refresh and clean yourself.

Renew (cleanse) your mind with the Word of God.

Example: Lord Jesus, you say in Your Word that I am to “speak the truth.”

You choose to Put On new fresh clean clothing.

Put On compassion, kindness, humility, gentleness and patience, bearing with one another, forgiving as the Lord forgave you.

And cover all of these with love (see Col. 3:1-17).

Example: Lord Jesus, I trust in You. Through your power Lord Jesus I choose to Put On speaking the truth. Thank you for the grace and power to do this as You have commanded.

#### Going on a Walk

When you go on a walk with someone you make a choice to go on a walk (an act of the mind and will and then the positive emotions of being on a walk follow)

No longer walk as the Gentiles in the futility of their minds:

Stop living in ignorant shipwrecked foolish ways by living in the dark with bitterness, anger, lust, deceit and lies.

Instead walk in the Lord Jesus:

Start Walking in Love – Put On giving yourself sacrificially to God and others

Start Walking in the Light – Put On goodness, righteousness, and truth

Start Walking in Wisdom – Put On the Lord’s will

#### Waking Up & Coming into the Light

Wake up and let Christ shine on you – A choice by God’s grace:

When you get up in the morning you often don’t want to get up but you make a choice to get up and therefore you get up by going against your desires to stay in bed. Then you turn on the light or open the window and you experience the brightness of the light or sun.

Get Up – “Get up, sleeper, and rise up from the dead, and the Messiah will shine on you” (Ephesians 5:14).

Come into the Light – “This, then, is the judgment: The light has come into the world, and people loved darkness rather than the light because their deeds were evil. <sup>20</sup> For everyone who practices wicked things hates the light and avoids it, so that his deeds may not be exposed. <sup>21</sup> But anyone who lives by the truth comes to the light, so that his works may be shown to be accomplished by God.” -Jesus Christ (John 3:19-20).



## Section 2.1.1 – Jesus’ Method – Put Off and Put On



### Train Yourself for Godliness by The Grace and Power of The Holy Spirit

“His divine power has given us everything required for life and godliness through the knowledge of Him who called us by His own glory and goodness. By these He has given us very great and precious promises, so that through them you may share in the divine nature, escaping the corruption that is in the world because of evil desires.”-2 Peter 1:3-4

“All Scripture is inspired by God and is profitable for teaching, for rebuking, for correcting, for training in righteousness, so that the man of God may be complete, equipped for every good work.”-2 Timothy 3:16-17

<u>Train yourself by putting into practice your new life in Christ</u> “Train yourself for godliness.” -1 Timothy 4:7	<u>Put Off (Repent)</u> “You <u>put off</u> your former way of life, the old self that is corrupted by deceitful desires” -Ephesians 4:22	<u>Renew Mind</u> “Being <u>renewed in the spirit [disposition/attitude] of your minds</u> ” -Ephesians 4:23	<u>Put On (Trust)</u> “You <u>put on</u> the new self, the one created according to God’s likeness in righteousness and purity of the truth.” -Ephesians 4:24	<u>Then the God honoring affections/desires come!</u> “Blessed . . . are those <u>who hear the Word of God and obey it.</u> ” -Jesus, Luke 11:27-28
<b>Example of how to practice putting off, renewing the mind, and putting on by the grace and power of the Holy Spirit.</b>	Lord Jesus, I repent of/turn from/put off my desire to lie to my bible study leader at church about what is going on in my life.	Lord Jesus, you say in Your Word that I am to “speak the truth.”	Lord Jesus, I turn to you and I trust in You. Through your power Lord Jesus I choose to put on speaking the truth. Thank you for the grace and power to do this as You have commanded.	I delight in the truthfulness of Your Word, Lord! Thank you that Your Word says: “I will delight in Your statutes” (Psalm 119:16).
“If you know these things you are blessed if you put them into practice.” -Jesus, John 13:17  <i>Practice this in your own life by studying <u>one</u> of the passages below and then fill out the chart to the right with your response.</i>  <b>Ephesians 4:17-5:21</b> <b>Colossians 3:1-17</b> <b>Romans 13:9-14</b> <b>Matthew 5-7</b> <b>Matthew 11:28-30</b> <b>Matthew 18:21-35</b> <b>Matthew 22:37-40</b> <b>Galatians 5:13-26</b> <b>Philippians 2:1-16</b> <b>Philippians 4:4-9</b> <b>2 Corinthians 10:3-5</b> <b>James 3:1-18; 4:1-12</b> <b>1 Corinthians 10:31</b> <b>Psalm 73</b> <b>1 Thess. 5:16-18</b>				



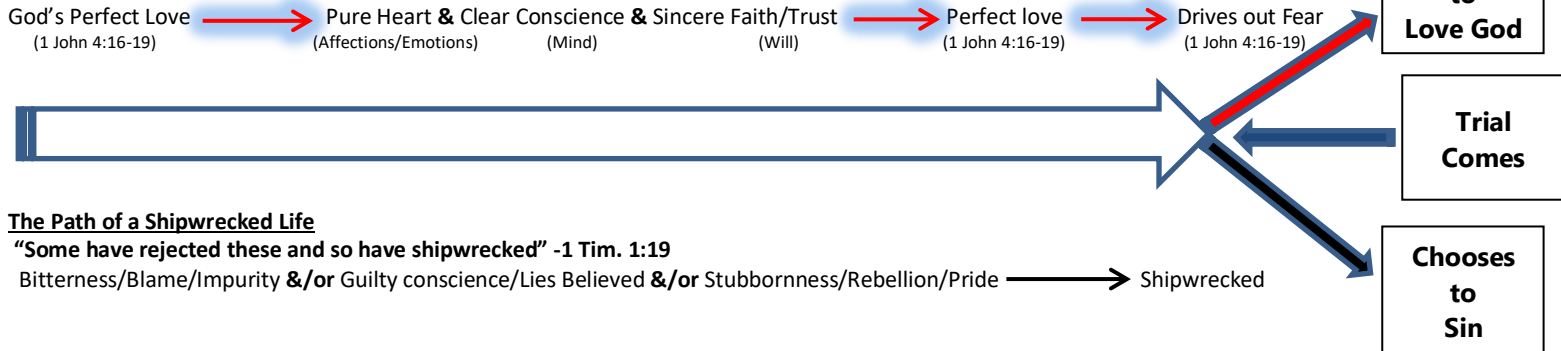
## Section 2.1.2 – False Repentance vs True Repentance



### What path are you walking on?

#### The Path of Love

**"The goal of this command is love, which comes from a pure heart and a good conscience and a sincere faith." -1 Tim.1:5**



#### The Path of a Shipwrecked Life

**"Some have rejected these and so have shipwrecked" -1 Tim. 1:19**

Bitterness/Blame/Impurity &/or Guilty conscience/Lies Believed &/or Stubbornness/Rebellion/Pride → Shipwrecked

**"No trial has overtaken you that is not distinctively human; and God is faithful; He will not let you be tested beyond what you can bear, but with the trial will also provide the way through, so that you will be able to endure it." – 1 Corinthians 10:13**

**"This is the message we have heard from Him and declare to you: God is light; in Him there is no darkness at all. If we claim to have fellowship with Him yet walk in the darkness, we lie and do not live by The Truth. But if we walk in the light, as He is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus, His Son, purifies us from all sin. If we claim to be without sin, we deceive ourselves and The Truth is not in us. If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just and will forgive us our sins and purify us from all unrighteousness. If we claim we have not sinned, we make Him out to be a liar and His word has no place in our lives." - 1 John 1:5-10**

### False Repentance vs True Repentance

#### **FALSE REPENTANCE**

False repentance is a selfish/proud sorrow that results in wisdom from hell.

As the Scriptures state:

**"the sorrow of the world produces death"-2 Cor. 7:10b).**

**"God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble."-James 4:6**

**"If you harbor bitter envy and selfish ambition in your hearts, do not boast about it or deny the truth. Such 'wisdom' does not come down from heaven but is earthly, unspiritual, of the devil. For where you have envy and selfish ambition, there you find disorder and every evil practice." -James 3:14-16**

**Example of False Repentance in the Scriptures: Then when Judas, who had betrayed Him [Jesus Christ], saw that He [Jesus Christ] had been condemned, he felt remorse and returned the thirty pieces of silver to the chief priests and elders, saying, "I have sinned by betraying innocent blood" . . . And he threw the pieces of silver into the sanctuary and departed; and he went away and hanged himself. -Matthew 27:3-5**

#### **TRUE REPENTANCE RESULTS IN TRUE FAITH/TRUST**

True repentance and true faith/trust are two sides of the same coin. You can't have one without the other. Thus, the Scriptures will sometimes say just "repent" (Acts 17:30) or sometimes say just "believe" (Matthew 4:17), or sometimes say "repent and believe" (Mark 1:15).

Only announcing your sin is not true repentance. Instead true repentance turns from sin and trusts in God.

#### **TRUE REPENTANCE**

True repentance requires a humbling of one's self and it results in salvation and wisdom from heaven.

As the Scriptures state:

**"For the sorrow that is according to the will of God produces a repentance without regret, leading to salvation"-2 Cor. 7:10a**

**"Repent! Turn away from all your rebellion, so that sin will not be your downfall."-Ezekiel 18:30**

**"Blessed are the poor in spirit [the humble], for theirs is the kingdom of heaven"-Jesus, Matt. 5:3**

**"The wisdom that comes from heaven is first of all pure; then peace-loving, considerate, submissive, full of mercy and good fruit, impartial and sincere." -James 3:17**

**Example of True Repentance in the Scriptures: Zacchaeus stopped and said to the Lord, "Behold, Lord, half of my possessions I will give to the poor, and if I have defrauded anyone of anything, I will give back four times as much." And Jesus said to him, "Today salvation has come to this house, because he, too, is a son of Abraham. "For the Son of Man has come to seek and to save that which was lost."-Luke 19:8-10**



## Wisdom of The World vs Wisdom from Heaven

“Now if any of you lacks **wisdom**, he should ask God, who gives generously”-James 1:5

“**Who is wise and understanding among you? Let him show it by his good life, by deeds done in the humility that comes from wisdom.** <sup>14</sup> But if you harbor bitter envy and selfish ambition in your hearts, do not boast about it or deny the truth. <sup>15</sup> Such "wisdom" does not come down from heaven but is earthly, unspiritual, of the devil. <sup>16</sup> For where you have envy and selfish ambition, there you find disorder and every evil practice. <sup>17</sup> But the wisdom that comes from heaven is first of all **pure; then peace-loving, considerate, submissive, full of mercy and good fruit, impartial and sincere.** <sup>18</sup> Peacemakers who sow in peace raise a harvest of righteousness.”-James 3:13-18

**God only gives Wisdom from Heaven. Wisdom of the World is NEVER Wisdom from Heaven (James 3:13-18)**

Wisdom of the World	Wisdom from Heaven
Harbor Bitter Envy	Pure
Selfish Ambition	Peace-Loving
Boasting/Brag	Gentle & Submissive/Compliant
Denying the Truth/Lie	Full of Mercy
Earthly	Good Fruit
Unspiritual/Sensual	Impartial/Without Favoritism
Of the Devil/Demonic	Sincere/Without Hypocrisy
Envy & Selfish Ambition → Disorder & Every Evil Practice	Peacemakers → Raise a Harvest of Righteousness

“**Friendship with World is Hatred/Hostility towards God**”-James 4:4

“**Turn my heart toward your statutes and not toward selfish gain.**  
**Turn my eyes away from worthless things; preserve my life according to your word.**”  
 – Psalm 119:36-37

“**For the mind set on the flesh is death, but the mind set on the Spirit is life and peace**”-Romans 8:6

“**Wisdom is vindicated [proved right] by all her children**”-Jesus, Luke 7:35

**God only gives “Good Fruit”/The Fruit of the Spirit. The Fruit of the Sinful Nature is NEVER the Fruit of the Spirit (Gal. 5)**

The Fruit of the Sinful Nature is Sin	The Fruit of the Spirit is Jesus
Sexual Immorality	Love
Impurity & Debauchery	Joy
Idolatry & Witchcraft	Peace
Discord/Strife	Patience/Longsuffering
Jealousy	Kindness
Fits of Rage	Faithfulness
Selfish Ambition	Gentleness/Meekness
Dissensions	Temperance/Self-Control
Factions, Envy	
Orgies/Carousing, Drunkenness	
And Anything Similar to all the Above	

“**No good tree bears bad fruit, nor does a bad tree bear good fruit.** <sup>44</sup> **Each tree is recognized by its own fruit.** People do not pick figs from thornbushes, or grapes from briars. <sup>45</sup> The good man brings good things out of the good stored up in his heart, and the evil man brings evil things out of the evil stored up in his heart. **For out of the overflow of his heart his mouth speaks.**

<sup>46</sup> Why do you call me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ and do not do what I say? <sup>47</sup> I will show you what he is like **who comes to me and hears my words and puts them into practice.** <sup>48</sup> He is like a man building a house, who dug down deep and laid the foundation on rock. When a flood came, the torrent struck that house but could not shake it, because it was well built. <sup>49</sup> But the one who hears my words and does not put them into practice is like a man who built a house on the ground without a foundation. The moment the torrent struck that house, it collapsed and its destruction was complete.”-Jesus, Luke 6:43-49

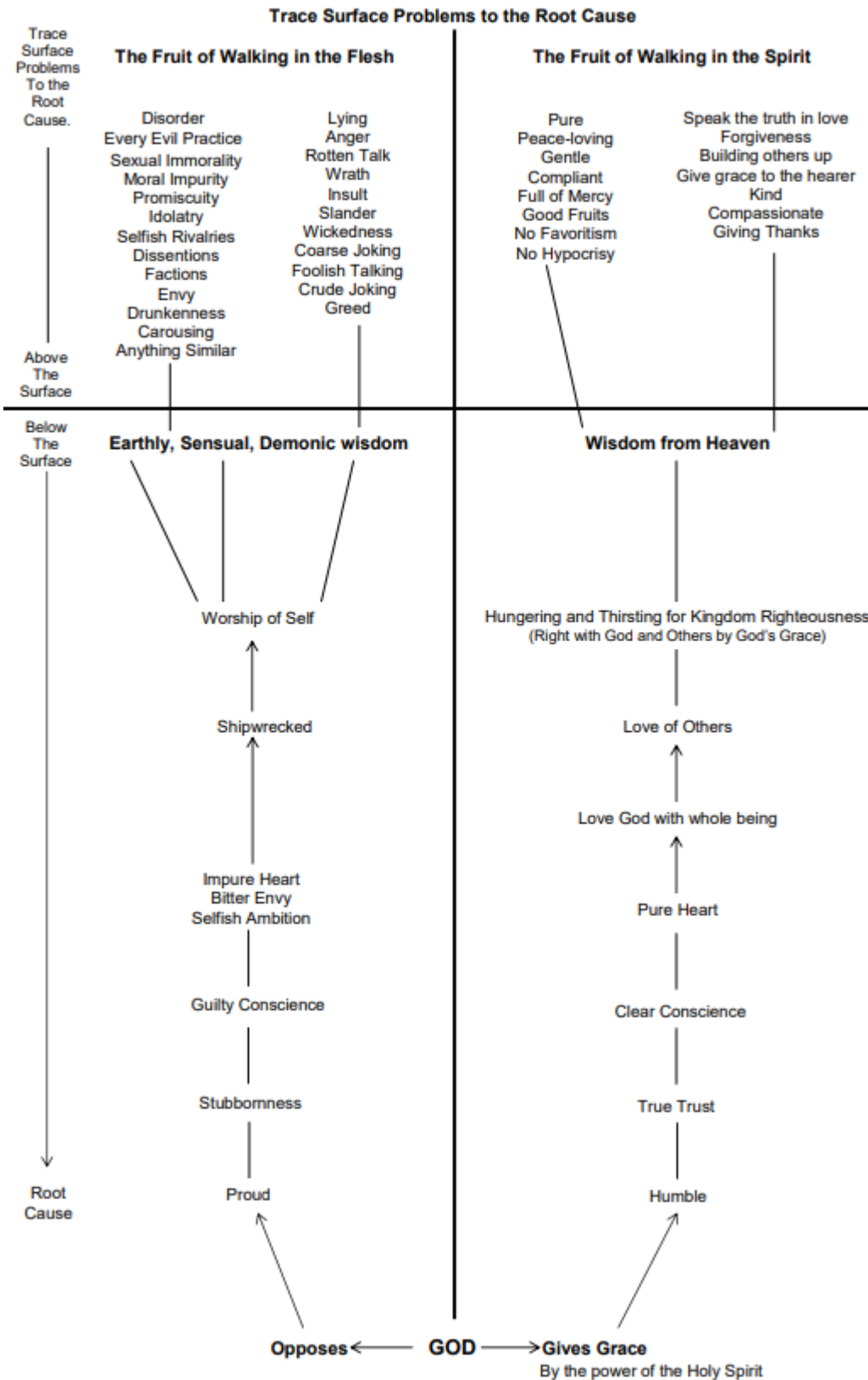


# Section 2.1.3 – Wisdom of the World vs. Wisdom from Heaven



“No good tree bears bad fruit, nor does a bad tree bear good fruit.  
Each tree is recognized by its own fruit.”—Jesus, Luke 6:43-4

Based on: James 3:13-4:10, 1 Timothy 1:5 & 19, Galatians 5:16-26, Matthew 5-7, Matthew 22:36-38, Ephesians 4-5





**“If you know these things you are blessed  
if you put them into practice.”**

**-Jesus, John 13:17**

The content on the next two pages:

The purposes of both the *Growing Instructions* handout and the *What is the Christian life about?* handout are to glorify God by providing memory aid maps that summarize Jesus’ instructions on how we obey the teachings of Jesus Christ. Once a new believer/Christian understands the gospel it is important to point them to Jesus to instruct them on how to grow in their relationship with Him.

Located at 1T3Life.org is a PDF color version of the *Growing Instructions* handout located under the “Growing Instructions” button.

In addition, there is a full-sized separate PDF version of the *What is the Christian life about?* handout located under the “The Christian Life” button.





## Section 2.1.4 – Growing Instructions

### GROWING INSTRUCTIONS



#### WATER

##### 2. DRINK THE LIVING WATER

“On the last and greatest day of the Feast, Jesus stood and said in a loud voice, “If anyone is thirsty, let him come to me and drink. Whoever believes in Me, as the Scripture has said, streams of living water will flow from within him.”

By this He meant the Spirit.”—John 7:37-39

“But when He, the Spirit of Truth, comes, He will guide you into all Truth. He will not speak on His own; He will speak only what He hears, and He will tell you what is yet to come.”

—Jesus, John 16:13

“So I say, live by the Spirit, and you will not gratify the desires of the sinful nature. For the sinful nature desires what is contrary to the Spirit, and the Spirit what is contrary to the sinful nature. They are in conflict with each other, so that you do not do what you want. But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under law. The acts of the sinful nature are obvious: sexual immorality, impurity and debauchery; idolatry and witchcraft; hatred, discord, jealousy, fits of rage, selfish ambition, dissensions, factions and envy; drunkenness, orgies, and the like. I warn you, as I did before, that those who live like this will not inherit the kingdom of God. But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness and self-control. Against such things there is no law. Those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the sinful nature with its passions and desires. Since we live by the Spirit, let us keep in step with the Spirit.”

—Galatians 5:16-25

##### Pray 2 Cor. 13:14 & Luke 11:13

“May the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God [the Father], and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with you all.”

“If you then, though you are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him!”—Jesus

**“No branch  
can bear fruit by  
itself; it must  
remain in the vine.  
Neither can you  
bear fruit unless  
you remain in Me.  
I am the vine; you  
are the branches. If  
a man remains in  
Me and I in him, he  
will bear much  
fruit; apart from  
Me you can do  
nothing.”**

—Jesus

John 15:4b-5

**“Let us fix our eyes  
on Jesus, the  
author and  
perfector of our  
faith”**

—Hebrews 12:2a

#### CONNECTION

#### LIGHT

##### 3. LIVE IN THE LIGHT

“This is the verdict: Light has come into the world, but men loved darkness instead of light because their deeds were evil. Everyone who does evil hates the light, and will not come into the light for fear that his deeds will be exposed. But whoever lives by the truth comes into the light, so that it may be seen plainly that what he has done has been done through God.”

—Jesus, John 3:19-21

“This is the message we have heard from Him and declare to you: God is light; in Him there is no darkness at all. If we claim to have fellowship with Him yet walk in the darkness, we lie and do not live by The Truth. But if we walk in the light, as He is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus, His Son, purifies us from all sin. If we claim to be without sin, we deceive ourselves and The Truth is not in us. If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just and will forgive us our sins and purify us from all unrighteousness. If we claim we have not sinned, we make Him out to be a liar and His word has no place in our lives.”

—1 John 1:5-10

##### Pray Colossians 1:9-14

“For this reason, since the day we heard about you, we have not stopped praying for you and asking God to fill you with the knowledge of His will through all spiritual wisdom and understanding. And we pray this in order that you may live a life worthy of the Lord and may please Him in every way: bearing fruit in every good work, growing in the knowledge of God, being strengthened with all power according to His glorious might so that you may have great endurance and patience, and joyfully giving thanks to the Father, who has qualified you to share in the inheritance of the saints in the Kingdom of light. For He has rescued us from the dominion of darkness and brought us into the Kingdom of the Son He loves, in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins.”

#### Good SOIL

##### 1. ROOTED IN JESUS’ LOVE

“When anyone hears the message about the Kingdom and does not understand it, the evil one comes and snatches away what was sown in his heart. This is the seed sown along the path. The one who received the seed that fell on rocky places is the man who hears the word and at once receives it with joy. But since he has no root, he lasts only a short time. When trouble or persecution comes because of the word, he quickly falls away. The one who received the seed that fell among the thorns is the man who hears the word, but the worries of this life and the deceitfulness of wealth choke it, making it unfruitful. But the one who received the seed that fell on good soil is the man who hears the word and understands it. He produces a crop, yielding a hundred, sixty or thirty times what was sown.”

—Jesus, Matthew 13:19-23

##### Pray Ephesians 3:16-21

“I pray that out of his glorious riches he may strengthen you with power through His Spirit in your inner being, so that Christ may dwell in your hearts through faith. And I pray that you, being rooted and established in love, may have power, together with all the saints, to grasp how wide and long and high and deep is the love of Christ, and to know this love that surpasses knowledge—that you may be filled to the measure of all the fullness of God. Now to Him who is able to do immeasurably more than all we ask or imagine, according to His power that is at work within us, to Him be glory in the church and in Christ Jesus throughout all generations, for ever and ever! Amen.”

##### 5. CONNECTED TO THE LORD JESUS

**“So then, just as you  
received Christ Jesus as  
Lord, continue to live in  
Him, rooted and built up  
in Him, strengthened in  
the faith as you were  
taught, and overflowing  
with thankfulness.”**

—Colossians 2:6-7

“This, then, is how you should pray:  
“Our Father in heaven,  
hallowed be your name, your  
kingdom come,  
your will be done”

—Jesus, Matthew 6:9

“Be joyful always; pray continually; give thanks in all circumstances, for this is God’s will for you in Christ Jesus.”

—1 Thess. 5:16-18

“Not my will,  
but Yours be done.”

—Luke 22:42

#### NOURISHMENT

##### 4. NOURISHED BY JESUS’ WORDS

“If you remain in Me and My Words remain in you, ask whatever you wish, and it will be given you. This is to my Father’s glory, that you bear much fruit, showing yourselves to be My disciples. As the Father has loved Me, so have I loved you. Now remain in My love. If you obey My commands, you will remain in My love, just as I have obeyed My Father’s commands and remain in His love. I have told you this so that My joy may be in you and that your joy may be complete. My command is this: Love each other as I have loved you. Greater love has no one than this, that he lay down His life for his friends. You are my friends if you do what I command. I no longer call you servants, because a servant does not know his master’s business. Instead, I have called you friends, for everything that I learned from my Father I have made known to you. You did not choose me, but I chose you and appointed you to go and bear fruit—fruit that will last. Then the Father will give you whatever you ask in my name. This is my command: Love each other.”

—Jesus, John 15:7-17

“I have told you these things, so that in me you may have peace. In this world you will have trouble. But take heart! I have overcome the world.”—Jesus, John 16:33

##### Pray Philippians 1:9-11

“And this is my prayer: that your love may abound more and more in knowledge and depth of insight, so that you may be able to discern what is best and may be pure and blameless until the day of Christ, filled with the fruit of righteousness that comes through Jesus Christ—to the glory and praise of God.”



## Section 2.1.3 – Growing Instructions



### What is the Christian life about?

*It is only through Jesus Christ! Jesus' Method. Jesus' Motivation. Jesus' Mission.*



Feeding  
Trough,  
Cross,  
Empty  
Tomb,  
Crown,  
Only  
Way

**It is only through Jesus Christ! He is both fully God and the perfect human. Jesus Christ is *The Good News* - The Savior King - born of a virgin, died for our sins on the cross, buried in a tomb, and resurrected on the third day.**

*"The time has come," Jesus said.*

*"The kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the good news!" - Mark 1:15*

*"I am The Way, and The Truth, and The Life;  
no one comes to the Father but through Me."*

*- Jesus, John 14:6*



Yoke,  
Clean  
Water

### **Jesus' Method:**

**Come to Jesus. Be Yoked to Jesus. Learn from Jesus through God's Word.**

*"Come to Me,*

*all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest.*

*Take My Yoke upon you*

*and*

*Learn from Me,*

*for I am gentle and humble in heart,*

*and you will find rest for your souls.*

*For My Yoke is easy and My burden is light."*

*- Jesus, Matthew 11:28-30*

*"Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth; Your Word is Truth." - Jesus, John 17:17*



Compass

### **Jesus' Motivation:**

**Love the LORD and others as Jesus did.**

(a) Love the LORD: "Love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength." - Jesus, Mark 12:30

(b) Love the Church: "Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another. By this all men will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another." - Jesus, John 13:34-35

(c) Love your neighbor: "Love your neighbor as yourself." - Jesus, Matthew 22:39

(d) Love your enemies: "Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you." - Jesus, Luke 6:27-28

(e) By obeying God's Word: "If you love Me, you will keep My commandments. And I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Counselor [the Holy Spirit] to be with you forever. He is the Spirit of Truth. The world is unable to receive Him because it doesn't see Him or know Him. But you do know Him, because He remains with you and will be in you." - Jesus, John 14:15-17



Lifebuoy

### **Jesus' Mission:**

**Make disciples of Jesus that make disciples of Jesus  
(in the home, in the church, and in the world).**

*"All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.*

*Go, therefore, make disciples from all the nations,*

*[note: the first step in making disciples is sharing the good news]*

*baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,*

*teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.*

*And behold, I am with you always, to the very end of the age."*

*- Jesus, Matthew 28:18-20*



Intentionally Remember – John 17:17

**“Sanctify [spiritually wash]  
them by the Truth;  
Your Word is Truth.”  
-Jesus, John 17:17**



## Section 2.2.1 – Jesus' Spiritual Washing Method

### **How to read and study The Scriptures/The Word of God:**

#### **Pray for your eyes and mind to be opened by God.**

"Open my eyes, that I may see wondrous things from Your instruction."

- Psalm 119:18

Then Jesus told them, "These are My words that I spoke to you while I was still with you . . . " Then He opened their minds to understand the Scriptures. He also said to them, "This is what is written: The Christ would suffer and rise from the dead the third day, and repentance for forgiveness of sins would be proclaimed in His name to all the nations, beginning at Jerusalem." - Luke 24:44-47

#### **Read the inspired Word of God with the Holy Spirit.**

"They read out of the book of instruction of God, translating to give the sense so that the people could understand what was read." - Nehemiah 8:8

#### **Examine, with the Holy Spirit, the text of Scripture to find the meaning (the intention expressed in the words in the text) put there by Holy Spirit and use the rest of Scripture to interpret it.**

"They received the word with great eagerness, examining the Scriptures daily to see whether these things were so." - Acts 17:11

"Be diligent to present yourself approved to God as a workman who does not need to be ashamed, accurately handling the Word of Truth." - 2 Tim 2:15

#### **Pay attention to the Scriptures for they are the very Words of God.**

"We have the prophetic Word strongly confirmed. You will do well to pay attention to it, as to a lamp shining in a dismal place, until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your hearts." - 2 Peter 1:19

"For Ezra had prepared his heart to seek the instruction of the LORD, and to do it, and to teach His statutes and ordinances" - Ezra 7:10

#### **Submit to the Holy Spirit sanctifying you [spiritually washing you] by the Word of God.**

"That is why Scripture says: 'God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.' Submit yourselves, then, to God." - James 4:6-7

"Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth; Your Word is Truth." - Jesus, John 17:17



## Section 2.2.1 – Jesus’ Spiritual Washing Method

### Learn from Jesus - Jesus’ Spiritual Washing Method

Jesus stated, “Sanctify them by The Truth; Your Word is Truth” (Jn 17:17). First, notice how in this statement Jesus *has qualified* what *The Truth* is. The Truth in this statement is not an individual’s experience, or their perception, or the books they have read instead “The Truth” *is qualified*, by Jesus Christ, to be *only* the Word of God. Therefore, The Truth is only the Word of God in this statement, and anything outside of the category of the Word of God in this statement is not to be qualified as The Truth. As Jesus stated, “Your Word is Truth” (Jn 17:17). Thus, in this statement “The Truth” = “The Word of God.”

Furthermore, in this statement by Jesus, what is to happen with “The Truth” (The Word of God)? The answer is “Sanctify them by The Truth.” What does the word “sanctify” mean? The word sanctify means to spiritually wash. This is clear in the Scriptures when it states: “Christ loved the church and gave himself up for her, that he might sanctify her, cleansing her by the washing of water through the Word, so that he might present the church to himself in splendor, not having spot or wrinkle or any such thing, but that she might be holy and without blemish.” (Ephesians 5:25-27).

Therefore, the method (process) of sanctification (spiritual washing), according to Jesus Christ, is through the process of being “sanctified by The Truth”/The Word of God. In addition, the Scriptures state that “His divine power has given us everything required for life and godliness through the knowledge of Him who called us by His own glory and goodness. By these He has given us very great and precious promises, so that through them you may share in the divine nature, escaping the corruption that is in the world because of evil desires” (2 Peter 1:3-4). The Scriptures also make it clear that: “All Scripture is God-breathed and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, for training in righteousness; so that the person of God may be adequate, equipped for every good work” (2 Tim. 3:16-17). Notice in this Scripture that it is only the Scriptures themselves that are stated to be “God-breathed” (not old or current books, etc.) For only the Scriptures came about when “moved by the Holy Spirit men spoke from God” (2 Peter 1:20-21). Furthermore, only “the Word of God is living and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the division of soul and spirit, and of joints and marrow, and is a discernor of the thoughts and intents of the heart” (Hebrews 4:12). Thus, through the “living and powerful” “God-breathed” [superior] Scriptures we have “everything required for life and godliness” and everything we need to “be adequate, equipped for every good work” [sufficient/enough]. Therefore, the Scriptures/The Truth are the superior and sufficient for spiritual washing.

Furthermore, the Scriptures warn, “If you have died with Christ to the elementary principles of the world, why, as if you were living in the world, do you submit yourself to decrees, such as, ‘Do not handle, do not taste, do not touch!’ (which all refer to things destined to perish with use)—in accordance with the commandments and teachings of men? These are matters which have, to be sure, the appearance of wisdom in self-made religion and self-abasement and severe treatment of the body, but are of no value against fleshly indulgence” (Col. 2:20-23). There are going to be many methods, principles, or processes that individuals are going to *claim* are “wise” and they are going to *claim* they are a part of revelation, when in reality they really come *from anti-Christian sanctification methodologies* that are either of sinful human origin (pride, evil desires, etc.) and/or demonic origin, and both should be refuted and rejected by all Christians because they result in spiritual bondage (Col. 2:8).

#### Sanctification /Spiritual Washing Methods

##### **Sanctification/Spiritual Washing Option (A):**

Jesus’ Spiritual Washing Method

(The Holy Spirit spiritual washing with the Scriptures)

##### **The Word of God**

- God-breathed
- Superior
- Sufficient
- The Truth
- Clean Water
- Results in purity, humbleness, holiness, and freedom

##### **Sanctification/Spiritual Washing Option (B):**

Other Spiritual Washing Methods

##### **Methods that have an “appearance of wisdom”**

- *Not God-breathed*
- *Not Superior*
- *Not Sufficient*
- *Not The Truth*
- Filthy infested water
- Results in impurity, pride, bitterness, burdens, and bondage





## Section 2.2.1 – Jesus’ Spiritual Washing Method

### The Word of God is The Truth

#### THE WORD OF GOD IS TRUSTWORTHY

**Jesus is The Most Brilliant One, fully God and The Perfect Man. Whatever Jesus says is true, because Jesus is The Truth.**

“He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn over all creation. For everything was created by Him, in heaven and on earth, the visible and the invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities— all things have been created through Him and for Him. He is before all things, and by Him all things hold together . . . All the treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden in Him.”  
-Col. 1:15-17, 2:3

“I am . . . The Truth”-Jesus, John 14:6

“The Truth is in Jesus”-Ephesians 4:21

“It is impossible for God to lie.”-Hebrews 6:18

**Jesus held to a verbal-plenary view of Scripture (that the very words of Scripture were inspired by God) and that all Scripture is inspired/absolutely truthful/inerrant (in both intent and in fact)/absolutely infallible/authoritative.**

“The Word of God”-Jesus, Mark 7:13

Jesus said, “It is written: ‘And he was numbered with the transgressors’; and I tell you that this must be fulfilled in me. Yes, what is written about me is reaching its fulfillment.”-Luke 22:37  
“Isaiah prophesied accurately about you hypocrites, as it is written.”-Jesus, Mark 7:6

“It is written: ‘Man must not live on bread alone but on every word that comes from the mouth of God.’”-Jesus, Matthew 4:4

“Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.”-Jesus, Matthew 24:35

**The Holy Spirit made it clear that Scripture is Superior to all other writings.**

“This above all you must understand that no prophecy comes from one’s own interpretation, for no prophecy ever came by the will of man, but moved by the Holy Spirit men spoke from God.”-2 Peter 1:20-21

“For when God made a promise to Abraham, since He had no one greater to swear by, He swore by Himself.”-Hebrews 6:13

“For the word of God is living and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the division of soul and spirit, and of joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.”-Hebrews 4:12

“The instruction of Yahweh is perfect, renewing one’s life; the testimony of Yahweh is trustworthy, making the inexperienced wise. The precepts of Yahweh are right, making the heart glad; the command of Yahweh is radiant, making the eyes light up. The fear of Yahweh is pure, enduring forever; the ordinances of Yahweh are reliable and altogether righteous. They are more desirable than gold—than an abundance of pure gold; and sweeter than honey, which comes from the honeycomb.”  
-Psalm 19:7-110

**The Holy Spirit made it clear that Scripture is Sufficient.**

“All Scripture is inspired [God-breathed] by God and is profitable for teaching, for rebuking, for correcting, for training in righteousness, so that the person of God may be complete, equipped for every good work.”-2 Timothy 3:16-18

“His divine power has given us everything required for life and godliness through the knowledge of Him who called us by His own glory and goodness. By these He has given us very great and precious promises, so that through them you may share in the divine nature, escaping the corruption that is in the world because of evil desires.”-2 Peter 1:3-4

**The Holy Spirit made it clear that Scripture is to be obeyed.**

“Blessed . . . are those who hear the Word of God and obey it.”  
-Jesus, Luke 11:28

#### SCRIPTURE SUMMARIZES SCRIPTURE

Lk 24:27,44-47; Gal 3:6-8, 15-18; Ps 105:1-45; Ps 136; Ac 2:14-47; Ac 7:1-8:35; Is 53; Ac 13:16-47; Ac 17:1-4, 16-34; Rm 1-15, etc.

#### The God Man

&

#### The God Man Written

#### Word

**Jesus is the God Man (fully God and Fully Man) – the Personal Living Word**

“In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God . . . And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth.”  
-John 1:1,14

Jesus “The Word of God”  
-Revelation 19:13

**Scripture is the God Man Written Word – the God-breathed/inspired Word**

“All Scripture is God-breathed”  
-2 Timothy 3:16

“Since you have been born again—not of perishable seed but of imperishable—through the living and enduring word of God. ‘For All flesh is like grass, and all its glory like a flower of the grass. The grass withers, and the flower falls, but the word of the Lord endures forever.’ And this is the word that was preached as the gospel to you.”  
-1 Peter 1:23-25

“You received the Word of God which you heard from us, you accepted it not as the word of men, but for what it really is, the Word of God, which also performs its work in you who believe.”  
-1 Thessalonians 2:13

#### The Word & The Spirit

“It is the Spirit who gives life; the flesh profits nothing; the rhema [Spirit quickened Word] that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life.”  
-Jesus, John 6:63

“For with God nothing is ever impossible and no rhēma [Spirit quickened Word] from God shall be without power or impossible of fulfillment.”  
-Luke 1:37

#### THE WORD OF GOD IS ACCURATE & TRUE

**Jesus taught that the Word of God is factually accurate and true.**

“Then beginning with Moses and with all the prophets, He explained to them the things concerning Himself in all the Scriptures.”-Luke 24:27

**Jesus referred to individuals and events in the historical sense.**

**Meaning these people really lived & the events really happened.**

This includes: Adam & Eve (Matt 19:4-6), Abel (Luke 11:51), Noah & the Flood (Matt 24:37-39), Abraham (John 8:56), Sodom & Gomorrah (Matt 10:15), Lot (Luke 17:28-32), Isaac & Jacob (Matt 8:11), Moses (Matt 8:4), Manna from Heaven (John 6:31), David (Matt 22:43), Solomon (Matt 6:29), Elijah (Luke 4:25), Elisha (Luke 4:27), Jonah (Matt 12:39-41), Daniel (Matt 24:15), Isaiah (Matt 15:7), Zachariah (Luke 11:51), etc.

“All your words are true”-Psalm 119:60

“Every word of God proves true”-Proverbs 30:5

“For whatever was written in the past was written for our instruction, so that we may have hope through endurance and through the encouragement from the Scriptures.”-Romans 15:4

“For we did not follow cleverly contrived myths when we made known to you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ; instead, we were eyewitnesses of His majesty.”-2 Peter 1:16

“Our beloved brother Paul, according to the wisdom given him, wrote to you, as also in all his letters, speaking in them of these things . . . which the untaught and unstable distort, as they do also the rest of the Scriptures, to their own destruction.”-2 Peter 3:15-16

#### SCRIPTURE INTERPRETS SCRIPTURE

**Scripture informs us how to interpret it.**

**Pray for the illumination of the text of Scripture by the Holy Spirit.**

“Open my eyes, that I may see Wondrous things from Your instruction.”-Psalm 119:18

Then He told them, “These are My words that I spoke to you while I was still with you—that everything written about Me in the Law of Moses, the Prophets, and the Psalms must be fulfilled.” Then He opened their minds to understand the Scriptures. He also said to them, “This is what is written: The Christ would suffer and rise from the dead the third day, and repentance for forgiveness of sins would be proclaimed in His name to all the nations, beginning at Jerusalem.”-Luke 24:44-47

**Read the inspired Word of God with the Holy Spirit.**

“They read out of the book of instruction of God, translating to give the sense so that the people could understand what was read.”-Nehemiah 8:8

**Examine, with the Holy Spirit, the text of Scripture to find the meaning (the intention expressed in the words in the text) put there by Holy Spirit and use the rest of Scripture to interpret it.**

“They received the word with great eagerness, examining the Scriptures daily to see whether these things were so.”-Acts 17:11

“Be diligent to present yourself approved to God as a workman who does not need to be ashamed, accurately handling the word of truth.”-2 Tim 2:15

**Pay attention to the Scriptures for they are the very Words of God.**

“So we have the prophetic word strongly confirmed. You will do well to pay attention to it, as to a lamp shining in a dismal place, until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your hearts.”  
-2 Peter 1:19

“For Ezra had prepared his heart to seek the instruction of Yahweh, and to do it, and to teach His statutes and ordinances”  
-Ezra 7:10

**Submit to the Holy Spirit sanctifying you by the Word of God.**

“That is why Scripture says: ‘God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.’ Submit yourselves, then, to God.”  
-James 4:6-7

“I have chosen the way of Truth”-Psalm 119:30  
“Sanctify them by the Truth; Your Word is Truth.”-Jesus, John 17:17





## Section 2.2.1 – Jesus’ Spiritual Washing Method

### Begin praying The Word of God

“The prayer of a righteous man is powerful and effective.  
Elijah was a man just like us. He prayed earnestly that it would not rain,  
and it did not rain on the land for three and a half years.”

-James 5:16-17

#### Praying God’s Will

**HIS WILL is revealed in HIS WORD; therefore, PRAY HIS WORD:**

“This is the confidence we have in approaching God: **that if we ask anything according to His will, He hears us.**  
And if we know that he hears us—whatever we ask—we know that we have what we asked of him.” -1 John 5:14-15

“**Cease striving and know that I am God;** I will be exalted among the nations, I will be exalted in the earth.” - Psalm 46:10

#### SOIL - ROOTED IN GOOD SOIL – See Matthew 13:19-23

**Pray Ephesians 3:14-21**

“I pray that out of his glorious riches he may strengthen you with **power through His Spirit** in your inner being, so that Christ may dwell in your hearts through faith. And I pray that you, being rooted and established in **love**, may have **power**, together with all the saints, to grasp how wide and long and high and deep is **the love of Christ**, and to **know this love** that surpasses knowledge—that you may be **filled** to the measure of all the fullness of God. Now to Him who is able to do immeasurably more than all we ask or imagine, according to **His power** that is at work within us, to Him be glory in the church and in Christ Jesus throughout all generations, for ever and ever! Amen.”

#### WATER - DRINK THE LIVING WATER– See John 7:37-39a, John 16:13, &Gal. 5:16-26

**Pray 2 Corinthians 13:14 & Ask for the Holy Spirit, Luke 11:13:**

“May the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God [the Father], and **the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with you all.**”

“If you then, though you are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, **how much more will your Father in heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him!**” - Jesus

#### LIGHT - LIVE IN THE LIGHT – See John 3:19-21 & 1 John 1:5-10

**Pray Colossians 1:9-14:**

“For this reason, since the day we heard about you, we have not stopped praying for you and asking God to fill you with the knowledge of his will through all spiritual wisdom and understanding. <sup>10</sup> And we pray this in order that you may live a life worthy of the Lord and may please him in every way: bearing fruit in every good work, growing in the knowledge of God, <sup>11</sup> being strengthened with all power according to his glorious might so that you may have great endurance and patience, and joyfully <sup>12</sup> **giving thanks to the Father, who has qualified you to share in the inheritance of the saints in the kingdom of light.** <sup>13</sup> **For he has rescued us from the dominion of darkness and brought us into the kingdom of the Son he loves,** <sup>14</sup> in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins.”

#### NOURISHMENT - NOURISHED BY HIS FRIENDSHIP AND HIS WORDS– See John 15:7-17 & John 16:33

**Pray Philippians 1:9-11:**

“And this is my prayer: **that your love may abound** more and more in knowledge and depth of insight, <sup>10</sup> so that you may be able to discern what is best and may be pure and blameless until the day of Christ, <sup>11</sup> filled with the fruit of righteousness that comes through Jesus Christ—to the glory and praise of God.”

#### CONNECTED TO THE VINE - GROW IN BEARING FRUIT BY BEING CONNECTED TO THE VINE/YOKED TO JESUS – See John 15:4-6, Matthew 11:28-30, & Colossians 2:6-7

**Pray:**

<sup>9</sup> “This, then, is how you should pray:

““Our Father in heaven, hallowed be your name,

<sup>10</sup> your kingdom come, your will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

<sup>11</sup> Give us today our daily bread.

<sup>12</sup> Forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors.

<sup>13</sup> And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from the evil one.” -Jesus, Matthew 6:9-13

“Be joyful always; pray continually; give thanks in all circumstances, for this is God’s will for you in Christ Jesus.” -1 Thess. 5:16-18

“Not my will, but yours be done.” -Luke 22:42

#### Some Passages to Pray from God’s Word/The Truth

Pray the Psalms of the day (e.g.: if it is the 4<sup>th</sup> you pray Psalm 4, 34, 64, 94, 124 and the Proverb of the day Proverbs 4), Matt. 5-7, Luke 10:20-22, Luke 12:11-12, John 17, John 15, Eph. 1:17-19, Eph. 4, 2 Thess. 1: 11-12, 2 Thess. 2:16-17, 2 Thess. 3:1-5, Acts 4:23-34, Acts 4:29-31, Acts 2:17-19, Rom. 15:5-7, 2 Cor. 1:3-11, Phil. 2:1-18, Col. 3:15-17, Col. 4:2-6, 1 Thess. 5:23-25, 2 Thess. 3:1, 1 Tim. 2:1-8, 2 Tim. 1:7, 2 Tim. 4:22, Heb. 4:14-16, Heb. 5:7-10, Heb. 7:24-26, Heb. 11:27, Heb. 12:28-29, Heb. 13:18-21, James 3:17-18, James 5:16, 1 Peter 1:22-23, 2 Pet. 1:3-10, 2 Pet. 3:18, 3 John 2-4, Jude 20-25, Rom. 8:26-27, Rom. 8:28-39, Rom. 11:33-36, Rev. 7:10-12, Rev. 11:16-19, Rev. 15:3-4, Rev. 19:1-10, Rev. 19:11-18, Rev. 21:6-8, Rev. 22:12-13, 1 Chron. 29: 10-13, 1 Chron. 16:8-36, 2 Chron. 6:14-42, Dan. 2:20-23, Dan. 4:2-3, Dan. 9:4-19, Dan. 10:12-21, etc.



## Section 2.2.2 – Studying The Scriptures

### Studying The Scriptures - Biblical Interpretation

#### God's Word is Relational

God's Word is a unified love story from God to us. It contains love letters, parables, proverbs, poems, songs, narrative stories, family history, relational prophesy, etc. God's Word was written in a relational way to reveal who He is. God did not write it as a mathematical textbook because we are more than simply mathematical beings. His Word is a supernatural relational revelation – designed to reveal to us His redemptive plan through Jesus Christ.

#### God's Word is Unified

All of God's word is unified. **Therefore, it is important to use Scripture as the primary commentary on itself.** For example, the purpose of the Old Testament was to point to Jesus Christ and prepare people for Him.

"Now the Berean Jews were of **more noble character** than those in Thessalonica, for **they received the message with great eagerness and examined the Scriptures every day to see if what Paul said was true.** As a result, many of them believed, as did also a number of prominent Greek women and many Greek men" - Acts 17:11-12

#### God's Word is Grammatical and Historical

Accurately putting the words you are reading in their grammatical-historical context is important.

**"Study and be eager and do your utmost to present yourself to God approved (tested by trial), a workman who has no cause to be ashamed, correctly analyzing and accurately dividing [rightly handling and skillfully teaching] the Word of Truth.** But avoid all empty (vain, useless, idle) talk, for it will lead people into more *and* more ungodliness." - 2 Timothy 2:15-16

When approaching the task of interpreting the Scriptures you should always begin with prayer. Pray and ask the Holy Spirit to counsel you. Ask Him to teach you the meaning (the intention expressed within the text) of God's Word and to show you the significance of what you are reading. Always bring your questions to Him because He knows all things. Further, God revealed His Word in a grammatical-historical context; therefore, it is wise to study it in its context.

***The best interpretation is one that accounts for all the textual clues within the complete text of Scripture.***

#### The Framework for Interpretation

1. The Scriptures are *inspired* by the Living God and are therefore infallible, inerrant (in both intent and fact), sufficient, authoritative, and superior to *all* other writings and must be approached in humility and seeking God for His meaning expressed in His Words
2. The Inspired Scriptures are a unified whole which is the context of
3. Inspired Testaments (Old and New) which are in the context of
4. Inspired historical & cultural settings *within* Scripture which is in the context of
5. Inspired books of the Scriptures which are in the context of an
6. Inspired type/s of genre (poetry, narrative, parable, etc.) which are in the context of an
7. Inspired section/s which is the context of
8. Inspired grammatical sentence/s which are in the context of
9. The Inspired word/s which are in the context of
10. Inspired grammatical sentence/s which are in the context of an
11. Inspired section/s which is the context of an
12. Inspired type/s of genre (poetry, narrative, parable, etc.) which is in the context of an
13. Inspired book which is the context of an
14. Inspired historical & cultural Setting *within* Scripture and all of the above is in the context of an
15. Inspired Testament (Old and New) which is in the context of
16. The Inspired Scriptures as a Unified Whole which are
17. Inspired by the Living God and are therefore infallible, inerrant (in both intent and fact), sufficient, authoritative, and superior to *all* other writings and must be approached in humility and seeking God for His meaning expressed in His Words

A Simplified Example: To understand the context of Genesis through Deuteronomy and the Old Testament Law it is helpful to understand that it was given to a group of over 600,000 men (plus women and children that included both Hebrews and Egyptians – see Exodus 12:37-38) who were in the desert living in a tent community and these laws were needed to form this new community out of all these people (similarly we have city codes that tell us how to build, etc.), needing to separate them from the polytheistic pagan practices they had just experienced in Egypt (under which they had lived for an extended period of time), and needing to show the uniqueness of Yahweh God and how these laws would point to Yahweh God's promise of the fulfillment of them in Jesus Christ and to bring the good news of His Kingdom to the whole world (Luke 4:43, 24:27, 24:44; Matthew 28:18-20; Psalm 105:1-45; Isaiah 53; Acts 2:14-47; Acts 6-7; Acts 13:16-47; Acts 26:6-7; Romans 4:13-14, Galatians 3:6-8, 15-18, etc.).

#### God Is a Personal Covenant Keeping God

Some important covenants to understand:

God's covenant with Adam

God's covenant with Noah

God's covenant with Abraham

God's covenant with Moses

Note: If you start in Genesis and read straight through to the end of Exodus chapter three you can see how Yahweh God was showing that He is the creator God and Yahweh is His name. And that He is orchestrating all the events to reveal who He is - the necessary, uncaused, personally-present, covenant keeping God, who "sees" the misery of His people, "hears" their cries, "enters into" their suffering, and delivers them from where they are to where He wants them to be.

God's covenant with David

God's promise of the New Covenant in the Old Testament

God's New Covenant with the Body of Christ

**There is so much more in God's Word than can be briefly summarized in this section. Therefore, deepen your relationship with Him by digging into God's Word, talking with Him about His Word, asking Him to reveal to you His Story as He revealed it in His Word, and reading it as He intended it—in relationship with Him.**



## Section 2.2.2 – Studying The Scriptures

### Studying The Scriptures - Biblical Interpretation (continued)

#### Scripture informs us how to interpret it:

##### **Pray for the illumination of the text of Scripture by the Holy Spirit.**

“Open my eyes, that I may see Wondrous things from Your instruction.” - Psalm 119:18

Then He told them, “These are My words that I spoke to you while I was still with you—that everything written about Me in the Law of Moses, the Prophets, and the Psalms must be fulfilled.” Then He opened their minds to understand the Scriptures. He also said to them, “This is what is written: The Christ would suffer and rise from the dead the third day, and repentance for forgiveness of sins would be proclaimed in His name to all the nations, beginning at Jerusalem.” - Luke 24:44-47

##### **Read the inspired Word of God with the Holy Spirit.**

“They read out of the book of instruction of God, translating to give the sense so that the people could understand what was read.” - Nehemiah 8:8

##### **Examine, with the Holy Spirit, the text of Scripture to find the meaning (the intention expressed in the words in the text) put there by Holy Spirit and use the rest of Scripture to interpret it.**

“They received the word with great eagerness, examining the Scriptures daily to see whether these things were so.” - Acts 17:11

“Be diligent to present yourself approved to God as a workman who does not need to be ashamed, accurately handling the word of truth.” - 2 Tim 2:15

##### **Pay attention to the Scriptures for they are the very Words of God.**

“So we have the prophetic word strongly confirmed. You will do well to pay attention to it, as to a lamp shining in a dismal place, until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your hearts.” - 2 Peter 1:19

“For Ezra had prepared his heart to seek the instruction of Yahweh, and to do it, and to teach His statutes and ordinances” - Ezra 7:10

##### **Submit to the Holy Spirit sanctifying you by the Word of God.**

“That is why Scripture says: ‘God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.’ Submit yourselves, then, to God.” - James 4:6-7

“I have chosen the way of Truth” - Psalm 119:30

“Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth; Your Word is Truth.” - Jesus, John 17:17

#### Important Terminology:

**The Truth = The Word of God/The Scriptures:** Only the Scriptures are used by God to spiritually wash us. All of the Scriptures are accurate and true and thus all of the Scriptures correspond to that which is (reality/being).

**truth:** truth is that which corresponds to that which is (reality/being). For example: 2+2=4 is true because if you have two rocks and you add two more rocks then you get four rocks. Thus, it corresponds to that which is. There are many true truths in God’s creation; however, only the Scriptures (The Truth) are used for spiritual washing.

**Meaning:** the intention (the grammatical-historical sense) expressed in the words within the text

**Purpose:** the *why* it was written and can be different then the meaning. For example: if I wrote the statement “Don’t walk on the grass” you can understand the meaning of this statement even if you don’t understand the purpose of why it was written (i.e.: was it because of new grass seed, was it because of pesticides sprayed, etc.) In addition, there can be multiple purposes for why something was written.

**Significance:** “the various valid repercussions, inferences, or implications stemming from the author’s meaning.”<sup>2</sup> Significance and meaning are different (See James 1:23-25).

**Application:** this deals with significance, it is how we take the meaning (the intention expressed in the words within the text) and how it was *applied* in the past or how we *apply* it today.

**Intertextuality:** All of the Scriptures are interconnected. God is the ultimate author of Scripture and thus Scripture is unified by the Holy Spirit’s incredibly brilliant intended intertextuality. For a more in-depth discussion of meaning, significance, and intertextuality and how all of these ideas come from the Scriptures see: Dr. Abner Chou, *The Hermeneutics of the Biblical Writers: Learning to Interpret Scripture from the Prophets and Apostles* (Grand Rapids, MI: Kregel Academic, 2018).

**Inspiration:** The Scriptures come from God. Thus, “moved by the Holy Spirit men spoke from God” (2 Peter 1:21) and “All Scripture is inspired [God-breathed] by God” (2 Timothy 3:16).

**Infallibility:** “signifies the quality of neither misleading nor being misled and so safeguards in categorical terms the truth that Holy Scripture is a sure, safe, and reliable rule and guide in all matters.”<sup>3</sup>

**Inerrancy:** The Scriptures are without error in both intent and in fact in the autographs (the originals).

**Necessity of the Scriptures:** without the Scriptures “it is impossible to live the Christian life”<sup>4</sup>

**Sufficiency of the Scriptures:** The Scriptures by the power of the Holy Spirit contain “all we need to know God’s will and live a life pleasing to him.”<sup>5</sup> Thus, the Scriptures are sufficient for spiritual washing.

**Exegesis:** pulling out the authorial meaning that is within the text (this is the correct way of interpreting)

**Eisegesis:** reading your own ideas or the ideas of someone else into the text (this a wrong way of interpreting)

#### **Important Statements on the Bible and Biblical Interpretation to know about:**

1. **Chicago Statement on Biblical Inerrancy** can be accessed online: [https://library.dts.edu/Pages/TL/Special/ICBI\\_1.pdf](https://library.dts.edu/Pages/TL/Special/ICBI_1.pdf)

2. **Chicago Statement on Biblical Hermeneutics** can be accessed online: [https://library.dts.edu/Pages/TL/Special/ICBI\\_2.pdf](https://library.dts.edu/Pages/TL/Special/ICBI_2.pdf)

3. **Chicago Statement on Biblical Application** can be accessed online: [https://library.dts.edu/Pages/TL/Special/ICBI\\_3.pdf](https://library.dts.edu/Pages/TL/Special/ICBI_3.pdf)

<sup>2</sup> Abner Chou, *The Hermeneutics of the Biblical Writers: Learning to Interpret Scripture from the Prophets and Apostles* (Grand Rapids, MI: Kregel Academic, 2018), 32.

<sup>3</sup> From the *Chicago Statement on Biblical Inerrancy* (available at [https://library.dts.edu/Pages/TL/Special/ICBI\\_1.pdf](https://library.dts.edu/Pages/TL/Special/ICBI_1.pdf))

<sup>4</sup> Dr. Heath Lambert, *A Theology of Biblical Counseling: The Doctrinal Foundations of Counseling Ministry* (Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan, 2016), 37.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid., 37.



## Section 2.2.2 – Studying The Scriptures



### Preach the Word

“I solemnly charge you in the presence of God and of Christ Jesus, who is to judge the living and the dead, and by His appearing and His kingdom: <sup>2</sup> **preach the word**; be ready in season and out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort, with great patience and instruction. <sup>3</sup> For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but wanting to have their ears tickled, they will accumulate for themselves teachers in accordance to their own desires”-2 Timothy 4:1-3

### By the Power of the Holy Spirit

“I was with you in weakness and in fear and in much trembling, <sup>4</sup> and my message and my preaching were not in persuasive words of wisdom, **but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power**, <sup>5</sup> **so that your faith would not rest on the wisdom of men, but on the power of God.**”  
-1 Corinthians 2:3-5

“For our gospel did not come to you in word only,  
**but also in power and in the Holy Spirit and with full conviction**”  
-1 Thessalonians 1:5

“For I am not ashamed of the gospel,  
**for it is the power of God for salvation** to everyone who believes”  
-Romans 1:16

“For **with God nothing is ever impossible**  
*and no word [rhema] from God shall be without power*  
**or impossible of fulfillment.**”  
-Luke 1:37



## Section 2.2.2 – Studying The Scriptures



### Studying The Scriptures The Books of the Old Testament

(Note: The books of the Bible are put together in groups and are therefore not necessary in chronological order. The information below is a summary from various resources.)

<p><b>FIVE</b></p> <p><b>Books of the Law</b></p> <p><b>Genesis</b> -Yahweh is the Creator King, how people rebelled against Yahweh, how Yahweh made a covenantal promise with Abraham, and how Yahweh's people ended up in Egypt</p> <p><b>Exodus</b> -How Yahweh saves His people from Egypt and gave them the Law</p> <p><b>Leviticus</b> -Details the laws given to help the Israelites worship and live as Yahweh's holy people</p> <p><b>Numbers</b> -Records the thirty-nine years of judgment that Israel spent in the wilderness</p> <p><b>Deuteronomy</b> -A review of Yahweh's Law in Moses' last days</p>	<p><b>TWELVE</b></p> <p><b>Books of History</b></p> <p><b>Joshua</b> -Yahweh's faithfulness in giving the Promised Land to Abraham's descendants</p> <p><b>Judges</b> -Yahweh's mercy despite His people doing what was right in their own eyes.</p> <p><b>Ruth</b> -Yahweh is the redeemer of all</p> <p><b>1 Samuel</b> -The establishment of kingship for Israel</p> <p><b>2 Samuel</b> -David is established as king of Israel</p> <p><b>1 Kings</b> -Solomon is established as king of Israel and covers the history of Israel through the divided kingdom (Israel-northern, Judah-southern). Includes Elijah's ministry.</p> <p><b>2 Kings</b> -History of the Northern (Israel) and the Southern (Judah) Kingdoms until they were conquered by Babylon. Cover's end of Elijah's ministry and Elisha's ministry then follows.</p> <p><b>1 Chronicles</b> -Reviews Genesis through 2 Samuel for the exiles who had returned from Babylonian captivity reminding them they were Yahweh's chosen people</p> <p><b>2 Chronicles</b> -Review of 1 Kings through 2 Kings for the exiles plus the declaration by Cyrus that the temple will be rebuilt and that the exiles will return</p> <p><b>Ezra</b> -Tells the return of the exiles, the rebuilding of the temple, and Ezra's ministry</p> <p><b>Nehemiah</b> -Continues history of exiles and how Yahweh uses Nehemiah (a man of prayer and a cupbearer)</p> <p><b>Esther</b> -God raises up a queen to rescue His people and to establish a festival to God's faithfulness</p>	<p><b>FIVE</b></p> <p><b>Books of Wisdom</b></p> <p><b>Job</b> -A profound book on the justice of Yahweh in light of suffering</p> <p><b>Psalms</b> -A book of prayer, praises, and songs to Yahweh</p> <p><b>Proverbs</b> -A books on how the fear of Yahweh is beginning of wisdom, how to live a wise life, and how to avoid being a fool</p> <p><b>Ecclesiastes</b> -A sermon by Solomon proclaiming that there is only One Shepherd whose words are like firmly embedded nails. Therefore, fear God and keep His commands. Everything else under the sun is like shepherding the wind and an ungraspable vapor.</p> <p><b>Song of Solomon</b> -"I am my Beloved's and He is mine," wonderful description of how a bride and bridegroom are to delight in each other</p>	<p><b>FIVE</b></p> <p><b>Books of Major Prophets</b></p> <p><b>Isaiah</b> -Isaiah prophesied before the Assyrian capture of the Northern Kingdom (Israel), through the Assyrian capture, and predicts the fall of the Southern Kingdom (Judah) to the Babylonians. Unveils dimensions of Yahweh's judgment and salvation. Yahweh's Kingdom on earth, with its Righteous Ruler and His righteous subjects, is the goal toward which the book of Isaiah steadily moves. Announces Christ as the suffering servant, the first coming of Christ, salvation through Christ, and the second coming of Christ.</p> <p><b>Jeremiah</b> -Prophesied to the Southern Kingdom (Judah) that the Babylonians will capture Jerusalem. Sin demands judgment and punishment from Yahweh, the importance of repentance, and the restoration of Israel. Yahweh is ultimate, the Creator of all that exists, all-powerful and everywhere present. Yahweh cares about people and their accountability to Him.</p> <p><b>Lamentations</b> -The prophet Jeremiah recognizes that the judgment of Jerusalem and the temple is the judgment of Righteous Yahweh. Mercy is found in Yahweh's lovingkindness, compassion, and faithfulness.</p> <p><b>Ezekiel</b> -The prophet Ezekiel prophecies in Babylon. Yahweh is sovereign over all creation and Yahweh is to be known and acknowledged.</p> <p><b>Daniel</b> -Records events that took place during the captivity in Babylon and encourages the people to trust in Yahweh who is sovereign over all.</p>	<p><b>TWELVE</b></p> <p><b>Books of Minor Prophets</b></p> <p><b>Hosea</b> -Yahweh's unconditional love for Israel (despite, harlotry, etc.) in the last days of the Northern Kingdom (last six kings of Israel) before Assyrian captivity.</p> <p><b>Joel</b> -The awesome day of Yahweh is coming therefore repent.</p> <p><b>Amos</b> -Yahweh's judgment on the Northern Kingdom/Israel (foretells exile by Assyrians &amp; restoration) during a time of prosperity. A call to genuine worship and social justice.</p> <p><b>Obadiah</b> -Prophecies to Edom and Jacob's descendants during the divided kingdom. Yahweh's judgment and destruction of Edom.</p> <p><b>Jonah</b> -Prophecies against the Assyrian city of Nineveh. Yahweh's great mercy to gentile nations through repentance.</p> <p><b>Micah</b> -Yahweh's judgment against the Northern Kingdom/Israel and the Southern Kingdom/Judah during prosperity and Yahweh's hope for Israel and Judah. A call to genuine worship and true social justice.</p> <p><b>Nahum</b> -Yahweh's final judgment on Nineveh (100 years after Jonah)</p> <p><b>Habakkuk</b> -The just shall live by faith, a dialogue between Habakkuk and Yahweh (before the Southern Kingdom of Judah was sent into exile)</p> <p><b>Zephaniah</b> -The day of Yahweh is coming on Judah and the nations (prophesied by Zephaniah during Josiah's reign)</p> <p><b>Haggai</b> -Called exiles to obey and rebuild the temple</p> <p><b>Zechariah</b> -Call to repentance, build temple, and prophecies about Christ</p> <p><b>Malachi</b> -Yahweh's love calls for repentance</p>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------



## Section 2.2.2 – Studying The Scriptures

### The Books of the New Testament

(Note: The books of the Bible are put together in groups and are therefore not necessary in chronological order.  
The information below is a summary from various resources.)

#### The Gospels

Matthew

Mark

Luke

John

#### Beginning of the Church & Spread of The Good News

Acts

#### Blueprint of Christian Doctrine

Romans

#### Additional Letters of Paul

1 Corinthians

2 Corinthians

Galatians

Ephesians

Philippians

Colossians

1 Thessalonians

2 Thessalonians

1 Timothy

2 Timothy

Titus

Philemon

#### Letter Showing Jesus is Our High Priest

Hebrews

#### Letter from James

James

#### Letters from Peter

1 Peter

2 Peter

#### Letters from John

1 John

2 John

3 John

#### Letter from Jude

Jude

#### John's Letter of Prophecy

Revelation





## Section 2.2.2 – Studying The Scriptures

### **One Unified True Story from Beginning to End**

The English Bible can be *simply* summarized in a memory aid map  
as *one unified story* with six chapters:<sup>6</sup>

<b>BEGINNINGS</b> Genesis 1-2	<b>REVOLT</b> Genesis 3-11	<b>PEOPLE</b> Genesis 12 through Malachi	<b>SAVIOR</b> Gospels to Acts 1	<b>CHURCH</b> Acts 2 to Revelation 20	<b>FOREVER</b> Revelation 21-22
----------------------------------	-------------------------------	------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------	------------------------------------

### **Scripture Summarizes Scripture**

Look up the following passages to see some ways  
that the Scriptures summarize the Scriptures:

Luke 24:27,44-47

Galatians 3:6-8, 15-18

Psalms 105:1-45

Psalms 136

Acts 2:14-47

Acts 7:1-8:35

Isaiah 53

Acts 13:16-47

Acts 17:1-4, 16-34

Romans 1-15

Hebrews 6:13-14,17

<sup>6</sup> This memory aid is adapted from Louie Giglio, ed., *The Jesus Bible* (Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan, 2018).

To God be the Glory! This handout is free and is intended for encouragement and educational purposes.  
For more information and for free handouts like this please go to: [1T3Life.org](http://1T3Life.org)

## What is the Christian life about?

***It is only through Jesus Christ! Jesus' Method. Jesus' Motivation. Jesus' Mission.***



Feeding  
Trough,  
Cross,  
Empty  
Tomb,  
Crown,  
Only  
Way

**It is only through Jesus Christ! He is both fully God and the perfect human. Jesus Christ is *The Good News* - The Savior King - born of a virgin, died for our sins on the cross, buried in a tomb, and resurrected on the third day.**

**"The time has come," Jesus said.**

**"The kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the good news!" - Mark 1:15**

**"I am The Way, and The Truth, and The Life;  
no one comes to the Father but through Me."**

**- Jesus, John 14:6**



Yoke,  
Clean  
Water

### **Jesus' Method:**

**Come to Jesus. Be Yoked to Jesus. Learn from Jesus through God's Word.**

**"Come to Me,**

**all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest.**

**Take My Yoke upon you  
and**

**Learn from Me,**

**for I am gentle and humble in heart,  
and you will find rest for your souls.**

**For My Yoke is easy and My burden is light."**

**- Jesus, Matthew 11:28-30**

**"Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth: Your Word is Truth." - Jesus, John 17:17**



Compass

### **Jesus' Motivation:**

**Love the LORD and others as Jesus did.**

(a) Love the LORD: "Love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength." - Jesus, Mark 12:30

(b) Love the Church: "Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another. By this all men will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another." - Jesus, John 13:34-35

(c) Love your neighbor: "Love your neighbor as yourself." - Jesus, Matthew 22:39

(d) Love your enemies: "Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you." - Jesus, Luke 6:27-28

(e) By obeying God's Word: "If you love Me, you will keep My commandments. And I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Counselor [the Holy Spirit] to be with you forever. He is the Spirit of Truth. The world is unable to receive Him because it doesn't see Him or know Him. But you do know Him, because He remains with you and will be in you." - Jesus, John 14:15-17



Lifebuoy

### **Jesus' Mission:**

**Make disciples of Jesus that make disciples of Jesus  
(in the home, in the church, and in the world).**

**"All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.**

**Go, therefore, make disciples from all the nations,**

**[note: the first step in making disciples is sharing the good news]**

**baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,  
teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.**

**And behold, I am with you always, to the very end of the age."**

**- Jesus, Matthew 28:18-20**



## Section 3 – Jesus' Motivation

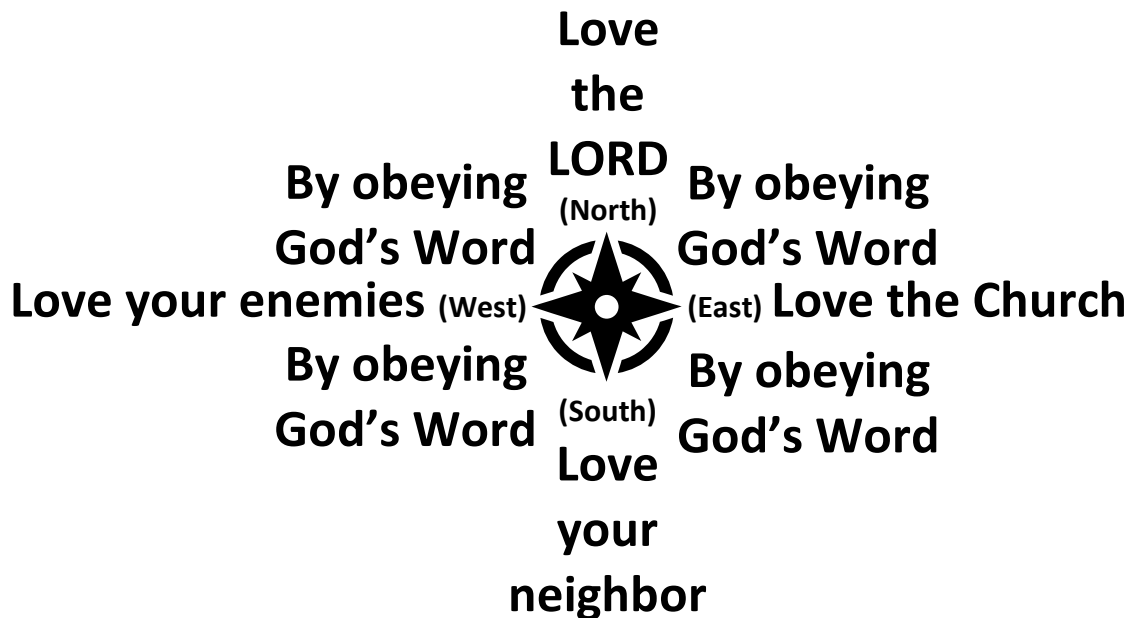


### Jesus' Motivation:

Love the LORD and others as Jesus did.

An analogy to consider:

A compass works because the needle always points to where North should be. Thus, by determining what direction is North you can then figure out the other directions (East, South, West). In an analogous way - loving God gives direction to how we are to love others and this is best seen by following how Jesus' loved God and others by obeying God's Word.



(a) Love the LORD: "Love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength." - Jesus, Mark 12:30

(b) Love the Church: "Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another. By this all men will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another." - Jesus, John 13:34-35

(c) Love your neighbor: "Love your neighbor as yourself." - Jesus, Matthew 22:39

(d) Love your enemies: "Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you." - Jesus, Luke 6:27-28

(e) By obeying God's Word: "If you love Me, you will keep My commandments. And I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Counselor [the Holy Spirit] to be with you forever. He is the Spirit of Truth. The world is unable to receive Him because it doesn't see Him or know Him. But you do know Him, because He remains with you and will be in you." - Jesus, John 14:15-17



## Section 3.1 – Loving as Jesus loved



### Loving as Jesus Loved

How did Jesus Love? Some ways Jesus loved:

#### He loved His Heavenly Father Fully

“The world must learn that **I love the Father and that I do exactly what my Father has commanded me.**”- Jesus, John 14:31

“Righteous Father, though the world does not know you, I know you, and they know that you have sent me. <sup>26</sup> I have made you known to them, and will continue to make you known in order that the love you have for me may be in them and that I myself may be in them.”—Jesus, John 17:25-26

#### He loved His Bride (The Church) Completely

“I am the good shepherd; I know my sheep and my sheep know me— <sup>15</sup> just as the Father knows me and I know the Father—and **I lay down my life for the sheep.** <sup>16</sup> I have other sheep that are not of this sheep pen. I must bring them also. They too will listen to my voice, and there shall be one flock and one shepherd.”-John, John 10:14-16

“My command is this: **Love each other as I have loved you.** <sup>13</sup> **Greater love** has no one than this, **that he lay down his life for his friends.**”—Jesus, John 15:12-13

#### He loved His Neighbor Persistently

“O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, you who kill the prophets and stone those sent to you, **how often I have longed to gather your children together**, as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, but you were not willing! <sup>35</sup> Look, your house is left to you desolate. I tell you, you will not see me again until you say, ‘Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.’”—Jesus, Luke 13:33-35

“The Lord . . . is **longsuffering** toward us, not willing that any should perish but that all should come to repentance.”-2 Peter 3:9

#### He loved His Enemies Rightly

“When they came to the place called the Skull, there they crucified him, along with the criminals—one on his right, the other on his left. <sup>34</sup> **Jesus said, “Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing.”** And they divided up his clothes by casting lots. <sup>35</sup> The people stood watching, and the rulers even sneered at him. They said, “He saved others; let him save himself if he is the Christ of God, the Chosen One.” - Luke 23:33-35

#### He loved His Heavenly Father’s Word Joyfully

“**I have brought you glory on earth by completing the work You gave me to do . . .** I am coming to You now, but I say these things while I am still in the world, **so that they may have the full measure of joy within them. I have given them Your Word** and the world has hated them, for they are not of the world any more than I am of the world.”- Jesus, John 17:4, 13-14

### **Jesus Loved Perfectly**

“perfect love drives out fear”-1 John 4:18



## Section 3.2 – What is love?



**Love:** *the giving of a person's personhood to another. Perfect love is the perfect giving of ones complete personhood to another.*<sup>7</sup> God is love<sup>8</sup> and we must be born again to love.<sup>9</sup> God's perfect love can be made complete in us so that we experience God's perfect love which drives out fear.<sup>10</sup> We are commanded to love out of a pure heart, a clear conscience and a sincere faith.<sup>11</sup>

How do we know what love is? Love requires our whole being.

"This is how we know what love is: Jesus Christ laid down his life for us. And we ought to lay down our lives for our brothers." –1 John 3:16

"My command is this: **Love each other as I have loved you.** Greater love has no one than this, that he lay down his life for his friends."—Jesus, John 15:12-13.

"For God **loved** the world in this way that **He gave** his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal life."—Jesus, John 3:16

"God demonstrates His own love for us in this: While we were still sinners, **Christ died for us.**"—Romans 5:8

"Dear friends, let us love one another, for **love comes from God.** Everyone who loves has been born of God and knows God. <sup>8</sup> Whoever does not love does not know God, because **God is love.** <sup>9</sup> This is how God showed his love among us: He sent his one and only Son into the world that we might live through him. <sup>10</sup> **This is love: not that we loved God, but that he loved us and sent his Son as an atoning sacrifice for our sins.** <sup>11</sup> Dear friends, since God so loved us, we also ought to **love one another.** <sup>12</sup> No one has ever seen God; but if we love one another, God lives in us and his love is made complete in us.

<sup>13</sup> We know that we live in him and he in us, because **he has given us of his Spirit.** <sup>14</sup> And we have seen and testify that the Father has sent his Son to be the Savior of the world. <sup>15</sup> If anyone acknowledges that Jesus is the Son of God, God lives in him and he in God. <sup>16</sup> **And so we know and rely on the love God has for us.**

**God is love.** Whoever lives in love lives in God, and God in him. <sup>17</sup> In this way, love is made complete among us so that we will have confidence on the day of judgment, because in this world we are like him. <sup>18</sup> **There is no fear in love. But perfect love drives out fear,** because fear has to do with punishment. **The one who fears is not made perfect in love.** <sup>19</sup> We love because he first loved us. <sup>20</sup> If anyone says, "I love God," yet hates his brother, he is a liar. For anyone who does not love his brother, whom he has seen, cannot love God, whom he has not seen. <sup>21</sup> And he has given us this command: **Whoever loves God must also love his brother.**"—1 John 4:7-21

"The goal of this command is love, which comes from a pure heart and a good conscience and a sincere faith."—1 Tim.1:5

### The Excellence of Love

"I show to you **a way according to excellence.** <sup>1</sup> If I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, but do not have love, I have become a noisy gong or a clanging cymbal. <sup>2</sup> If I have the gift of prophecy, and know all mysteries and all knowledge; and if I have all faith, so as to remove mountains, but do not have love, I am nothing. <sup>3</sup> And if I give all my possessions to feed the poor, and if I surrender my body to be burned, but do not have love, it profits me nothing.

<sup>4</sup> **Love is patient [long-suffering], love is kind and is not jealous [does not envy, instead it gives]; love does not brag [boast/vaunt itself, instead it builds others up] and is not arrogant [puffed up, instead it is humble], <sup>5</sup> does not act unbecomingly [rude, instead it is full of grace]; it does not seek its own [its own things/self-seeking, instead it is self-sacrificing], is not provoked, does not take into account a wrong suffered [does not impute evil, does not keep a record of wrongs, instead it forgives as Christ forgave], <sup>6</sup> does not rejoice in unrighteousness [injustice, wrong; iniquity, falsehood, deceitfulness], but rejoices with the truth; <sup>7</sup> bears all things, believes all things, hopes all things, endures all things.**

<sup>8</sup> **Love never fails;** but if there are gifts of prophecy, they will be done away; if there are tongues, they will cease; if there is knowledge, it will be done away. <sup>9</sup> For we know in part and we prophesy in part; <sup>10</sup> but when the perfect comes, the partial will be done away. <sup>11</sup> **When I was a child, I used to speak like a child, think like a child, reason like a child; when I became a man, I did away with [abolished] childish things.** <sup>12</sup> For now we see in a mirror dimly, but then face to face; now I know in part, but then I will know fully just as I also have been fully known. <sup>13</sup> But now remains these three: faith, hope, love; and the greatest of these is love."—The Holy Spirit's Commentary on Love, 1 Corinthians 12:31b-13:18

<sup>7</sup> Influenced by T.W. Hunt and John 15:13, John 3:16, 1 Cor. 13:1-13, 1 John 4:7-21

<sup>8</sup> 1 John 4:16

<sup>9</sup> 1 John 4:7-5:12

<sup>10</sup> 1 John 4:16-18

<sup>11</sup> 1 Timothy 1:5



## Section 3.2 – What is love?

### How should we love? Love as Jesus loved:

“It was just before the Passover Feast. Jesus knew that the time had come for him to leave this world and go to the Father. Having loved his own who were in the world, **he now showed them the full extent of his love.**

<sup>2</sup> The evening meal was being served, and the devil had already prompted Judas Iscariot, son of Simon, to betray Jesus. <sup>3</sup> Jesus knew that the Father had put all things under his power, and that he had come from God and was returning to God; <sup>4</sup> so he got up from the meal, took off his outer clothing, and wrapped a towel around his waist. <sup>5</sup> After that, he poured water into a basin and began to wash his disciples’ feet, drying them with the towel that was wrapped around him.

<sup>6</sup> He came to Simon Peter, who said to him, “Lord, are you going to wash my feet?”

<sup>7</sup> Jesus replied, “You do not realize now what I am doing, but later you will understand.”

<sup>8</sup> “No,” said Peter, “you shall never wash my feet.”

Jesus answered, “Unless I wash you, you have no part with me.”

<sup>9</sup> “Then, Lord,” Simon Peter replied, “not just my feet but my hands and my head as well!”

<sup>10</sup> Jesus answered, “A person who has had a bath needs only to wash his feet; his whole body is clean. And you are clean, though not every one of you.” <sup>11</sup> For he knew who was going to betray him, and that was why he said not every one was clean.

<sup>12</sup> When he had finished washing their feet, he put on his clothes and returned to his place. “Do you understand what I have done for you?” he asked them. <sup>13</sup> “You call me ‘Teacher’ and ‘Lord,’ and rightly so, for that is what I am. <sup>14</sup> Now that I, your Lord and Teacher, have washed your feet, you also should wash one another’s feet. <sup>15</sup> I have set you an example that you should do as I have done for you. <sup>16</sup> I tell you the truth, no servant is greater than his master, nor is a messenger greater than the one who sent him. <sup>17</sup> Now that you know these things, you will be blessed if you do them.”-John 13:1-17

“A new command I give you: **Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another.**”-Jesus, John 13:34

“My command is this: **Love each other as I have loved you.**”-Jesus, John 15:12

“This is my command: **Love each other.**”-John 15:17

“And this is his command: to believe in the name of his Son, Jesus Christ, and **to love one another as he commanded us.**”-1 John 3:23

“Everyone who believes that Jesus is the Christ is born of God, and everyone who loves the father loves his child as well. <sup>2</sup> **This is how we know that we love the children of God: by loving God and carrying out his commands.** <sup>3</sup> **This is love for God: to obey his commands. And his commands are not burdensome, for everyone born of God overcomes the world.** This is the victory that has overcome the world, even our faith. <sup>5</sup> Who is it that overcomes the world? Only he who believes that Jesus is the Son of God.”-1 John 5:1-5

### Love requires the giving of ourselves to others by the Power of the Holy Spirit

“The fruit of the Spirit is love”-Galatians 5:22

**The Goal - Love:** “The goal of this command is love, which comes from a pure heart and a good conscience and a sincere faith.” -1 Tim.1:5

God’s Perfect Love → Pure Heart & Clear Conscience & Sincere Faith/Trust → Perfect love → Drives out Fear  
(1 John 4:16-19)

The Rejection of this is a Shipwrecked Life: “Some have rejected these and so have shipwrecked” -1 Tim. 1:19

Bitterness/Blame/Impurity &/or Guilty conscience/Lies Believed &/or Stubbornness/Rebellion/Pride → Shipwrecked

### We are to love God with our whole being:

“Love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength.”-Jesus, Mark 12:30





Intentionally Remember – Mark 12:30



**“Love the LORD  
your God  
with all your heart  
and with all your soul  
and with all your mind  
and with all your  
strength.”  
–Jesus, Mark 12:30**



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.

“Yahweh is King forever and ever . . . O Yahweh, You have heard the desire of the humble; You will strengthen their heart, You will incline Your ear to vindicate the orphan and the oppressed, so that mere earthly mortals will never again strike terror.”

-Psalm 10:16-18

“Those who know your name will trust in you, for you, Yahweh, have never forsaken those who seek you.”

-Psalm 9:10

**Yahweh:** is the name of the necessary, uncaused, personally-present, covenant keeping God, who “sees” the misery of His people, “hears” their cries, “enters into” their suffering, and delivers them from where they are to where He wants them to be.<sup>12</sup>

“I am **Yahweh**; that is my name! I will not yield my glory to another or my praise to idols.” -Isaiah 42:8

“Now Moses was tending the flock of Jethro his father-in-law, the priest of Midian, and he led the flock to the far side of the desert and came to **Horeb, the mountain of God**.<sup>2</sup> There the angel of **Yahweh** appeared to him in flames of fire from within a bush. Moses saw that though the bush was on fire it did not burn up.<sup>3</sup> So Moses thought, “I will go over and see this strange sight—why the bush does not burn up.”

<sup>4</sup> When **Yahweh** saw that he had gone over to look, **God** called to him from within the bush, “Moses! Moses!” And Moses said, “Here I am.”

<sup>5</sup> “Do not come any closer,” **God** said. “Take off your sandals, for the place where you are standing is holy ground.” <sup>6</sup> Then he said, “**I am the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob**.” At this, Moses hid his face, because he was afraid to look at **God**.<sup>7</sup> **Yahweh** said, “I have indeed seen the misery of my people in Egypt. I have heard them crying out because of their slave drivers, and I know their sorrows.”<sup>8</sup> So I have come down to rescue them from the hand of the Egyptians and to bring them up out of that land into a good and spacious land, a land flowing with milk and honey—the home of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites and Jebusites.

<sup>9</sup> And now the cry of the Israelites has reached me, and I have seen the way the Egyptians are oppressing them.<sup>10</sup> So now, go. I am sending you to Pharaoh to bring my people the Israelites out of Egypt.”<sup>11</sup> But Moses said to **God**, “Who am I, that I should go to Pharaoh and bring the Israelites out of Egypt?”<sup>12</sup> And **God** said, “**I will be with you**. And this will be the sign to you that it is I who have sent you: When you have brought the people out of Egypt, **you will worship God on this mountain**.”<sup>13</sup> Moses said to **God**, “Suppose I go to the Israelites and say to them, ‘The **God** of your fathers has sent me to you,’ and they ask me, ‘What is his name?’ Then what shall I tell them?”<sup>14</sup> **God** said to Moses, “**I AM WHO I AM**. This is what you are to say to the Israelites: ‘**I AM** has sent me to you.’”<sup>15</sup> **God** also said to Moses, “Say to the Israelites, ‘**Yahweh**, the God of your fathers—the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob—has sent me to you.’ **This is my name forever, the name by which I am to be remembered from generation to generation**.”<sup>16</sup> “Go, assemble the elders of Israel and say to them, ‘**Yahweh**, the God of your fathers—the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob—appeared to me and said: I have watched over you and have seen what has been done to you in Egypt.’”<sup>17</sup> And I have promised to bring you up out of your misery in Egypt into the land of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites and Jebusites—a land flowing with milk and honey.”<sup>18</sup> “The elders of Israel will listen to you. Then you and the elders are to go to the king of Egypt and say to him, ‘**Yahweh**, the God of the Hebrews, has met with us. Let us take a three-day journey into the desert to offer sacrifices to **Yahweh our God**.’”<sup>19</sup> But **I know** that the king of Egypt will not let you go unless a mighty hand compels him.<sup>20</sup> So **I will** stretch out my hand and strike the Egyptians with all the wonders that I will perform among them. After that, he will let you go.” -Exodus 3:1-20

“Hear, O Israel: **Yahweh** our God, **Yahweh** is One.”<sup>5</sup> Love **Yahweh** your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength.” -Deut. 6:4

“Fear **Yahweh** your God, serve Him only” -Deut. 6:13 and Luke 4:8

“Hear, O Israel: **Yahweh** our God, **Yahweh** is One.”<sup>5</sup> Love **Yahweh** your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength.” -Deut. 6:4

“Fear **Yahweh** your God, serve Him only” -Deut. 6:13 and Luke 4:8

<sup>12</sup> **Note #1:** Anthropomorphic terms such as “see,” “hear,” etc. are used in the Scriptures to help us relate to God in an analogous sense. Yahweh God is “not a man” (Numbers 23:19) instead Yahweh God is “Spirit” (John 4:23) and in Yahweh God “we live and move and have our being” (Acts 17:24). See the following pages for more on what Yahweh God is. **Note #2:** Yahweh God is Necessary (must be, has to be, cannot not be) Being (that which is; “I”= essence/that which-ness; “AM”= existence/is-ness) and because Yahweh’s Essence is completely identical to Yahweh’s Existence therefore Yahweh is a Necessary Being and in contrast we have a finite/dependent/limited being (that which is) because we could cease to be/do not have to be/etc. **Note #3:** because Yahweh God is in a category of one (there is no other Necessary Being) and because we are finite/limited/dependent beings who are being given there being we must speak about Yahweh God by analogy (John 3:12-13). For example we are moral in a finite way and Yahweh God is moral in an infinite way. To clarify further, there are different ways that we can speak about something or know something. We can know something univocally (meaning in a one to one correspondence – a completely similar way). We can know something equivocally (meaning in a completely different way). Or we can know something analogously (in a similar but different way). When it comes to knowing and speaking about Yahweh God because we are finite/limited/dependent beings, etc. and Yahweh God is in a category of one as a Necessary Being then we must know Yahweh God in a similar but different way (i.e. analogously) and not in a univocal way because we are not God and not in an equivocal way because there is some similarity (i.e.: we are moral and Yahweh God is moral, etc.). And because of this similarity but difference we use what is called the principle of intrinsic attribution - meaning we can predicate that which is intrinsic to us about Yahweh God, but the way in which this is predicated is different (finite or infinite). For example, Yahweh God (subject) is moral (predicate). In this example the predicate (moral) is predicated in an infinite way. While for us – humans (subject) are moral (predicate) the predicate is predicated in finite/limited/dependent way because we are not necessary being (i.e.: we could cease to be, we don’t have to be, etc.). [Typically in English Bibles in the Old Testament, uppercase LORD is used for *Yahweh* (the name of God) and Lord is used for *Adonai* (the title of Lord).]



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.



# YAHWEH God is One God that is Three Persons (The Trinity)

<p><b>YAHWEH GOD</b></p> <p><b>There is Only One True God</b>          "I am Yahweh and there is no other, apart from me there is no God"—Isaiah 45:5 (see also Isaiah 43:10-13)  <u>"I am the First and I am the Last;</u> apart from me there is no God"—Isaiah 44:6 (see also Isaiah 48:12)</p> <p><b>Yahweh is the Only True God's Name</b>          "I am Yahweh; that is my name!"—Isaiah 42:8 (also Exodus 3)          "I am Yahweh, the God of all mankind"—Jeremiah 32:26          "Yahweh is God"—Psalm 100:3</p> <p><b>We are to Love the One True God</b>          "Yahweh our God, Yahweh is One. Love Yahweh your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength."—Deuteronomy 6:4-5 (see also Matt. 22:37-40)</p> <p><b>Yahweh is the Creator &amp; Sustainer of All that has Being</b>          "This is what Yahweh, your Redeemer who formed you from the womb, says: I am Yahweh, who made everything"—Is.44:24          "Yahweh God made the earth and the heavens."—Gen. 2:4          "God, who gives life to all things"—1 Tim.6:13          "The God who made the world and everything in it—He is Lord of heaven and earth and does not live in shrines made by hands. Neither is He served by human hands, as though He needed anything, since He Himself gives everyone life and breath and all things . . . He is not far from each one of us. For in Him we live and move and have our being."—Acts 17:24-28</p> <p><b>Yahweh Alone is Worthy of Worship</b>          "I am Yahweh, that is My name; I will not give My glory to another or My praise to idols."—Isaiah 42:8  <u>"I am Yahweh, and there is no other.</u> I have not spoken in secret . . . I, Yahweh, speak the truth; I declare what is right. Gather together and come; assemble, you fugitives from the nations. Ignorant are those who carry about idols of wood, who pray to gods that cannot save. Declare what is to be, present it—let them take counsel together. Who foretold this long ago, who declared it from the distant past? Was it not I, Yahweh? And <u>there is no God apart from me, a righteous God and a Savior; there is none but Me.</u> Turn to me and be saved . . . for <u>I am God, and there is no other . . . Before me every knee will bow; by me every tongue will swear.</u>"—Isaiah 45:18-25</p>	<p><b>Yahweh is the Only Savior</b>          "God also said to Moses, 'Say to the Israelites, 'Yahweh, the God of your fathers—the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob—has sent me to you.' This is <u>my name</u> forever, <u>the name</u> by which I am to be remembered from generation to generation."</p> <p>—Exodus 3:15  <u>"I am Yahweh and apart from me there is no savior."</u>          —Isaiah 43:11</p> <p><b>Yahweh is One God (What 1)</b>  <b>Yahweh is Three Persons (Who 1, Who 2, Who 3)</b>          "the name [singular not plural, What 1] of the Father [Who 1] and the Son [Who 2] and of the Holy Spirit [Who 3]"          —Matt.28:19          (see Deut. 6:4; Romans 1:1-5; 3 John 7; 2 Cor. 13:14; Eph. 1:17; Col. 1:12-14; John 1:1-18; 2 John 9; John 14-17, etc.)</p>	<p><b>YAHWEH IS . . .</b></p> <p>"For since the creation of the world God's <u>invisible</u> qualities—his <u>eternal</u> power and <u>divine</u> nature—have been clearly seen, being understood from what has been made, so that men are without excuse."—Romans 1:19-20</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Necessary (must be, has to be, cannot not be) Being (that which is)</b>          "I AM"—Exodus 3:14 (Jn. 8:58, Rev.4:11, Col.1:16-17, Acts 17:28, etc.)</li> <li><b>Immutable (unchanging)</b>          "For I, Yahweh, do not change"—Malachi 3:6 (Heb. 6:17-18, etc.)</li> <li><b>Non-temporal (not limited by time, eternal)</b>          "The <u>eternal</u> God"—Deut. 33:27 (Romans 1:20, Romans 16:26, etc.)</li> <li><b>Non-spatial (not limited by space, infinite, unlimited)</b>          "God is Spirit"—John 4:24          "God's <u>invisible</u> qualities"—Romans 1:20 (1 Tim.1:17, 6:16, etc.)</li> <li><b>Pure Actuality (perfect, no potentiality whatsoever)</b>          "Yahweh, the Most High"—Psalm 7:17          "Immortal [incorruptible] God"—Romans 1:23 (1 Tim.1:17, etc.)</li> <li><b>One (there is no other)</b>          "I am Yahweh and there is no other, <u>apart from me there is no God</u>"—Isaiah 45:5 (Isaiah 43:10-13, 1 Tim.1:17 etc.)</li> <li><b>Uncaused</b>  <u>"I am the First and I am the Last;</u> apart from me there is no God"—Isaiah 44:6 (Exodus 3:14, etc.)</li> <li><b>Omnipresent (all present) Uncaused First cause of all that has being/given being/came to be/being given being, etc.</b> "Our Lord and God . . . you created all things, and by your will they were created and have their being."—Rev.4:11(Acts 17:24-28; Is. 66:2, etc.)</li> <li><b>Omniscient (all-knowing)</b>  <u>"God is greater than our hearts and knows all things."</u>—1 Jn.3:20 (Rom. 11:33, Matt. 6:8, 10:30, Isaiah 42:5-9, 44:6-8, etc.)</li> <li><b>Omnipotent (unlimited in power, all powerful)</b>          "Ah, Sovereign Yahweh, you have made the heavens and the earth by your great power . . . Nothing is too hard for you."—Jer. 32:17 (Rev. 11:17, 15:3, etc.)</li> <li><b>Omnibenevolent (infinitely good, all good)</b>          "Praise Yahweh Almighty, for Yahweh is good; His love endures forever."—Jer. 33:11 (Eph. 3:16-21, etc.)</li> <li><b>Personal</b>          "God is love"—1 John 4:8&amp;16 (Matt. 5:45, John 3:16, Exodus 3:1-20, 1 Peter 5:7, etc.)</li> </ol>
<p><b>THE SON IS GOD</b></p> <p>Our sin separated us from Yahweh God; therefore, the Son added a Human Nature, Jesus which means "Yahweh saves" (Matt.1:21). He lived the perfect life, and died on the cross as a perfect atoning sacrifice for our sin, and the perfect demonstration of Yahweh God's love and justice (Jn. 3:16, Rom. 3:26, etc.), and rose again demonstrating that the Son is God. That is why He has the title of Immanuel/"God with us"(Matt.1:23)          "Jesus Christ, the Son of God"—Mark 1:1 (2 Cor. 1:19)          "Christ Jesus: who, existing in very nature God . . . assuming the form of a servant, taking on the likeness of men. And when He had come as a man in His external form, He humbled Himself by becoming obedient to the point of death— even to death on a cross . . . so that at the name of Jesus [Yahweh Saves] <u>every knee will bow . . . and every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord</u>"—Phil. 2:5-11          "Before Abraham came into being, I AM."—Jesus, John 8:58 (Ex.3:14)  <u>"I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last,</u> the Beginning and the End."—Jesus, Rev.22:13          "I am <u>with you always</u>"—Jesus, Matt. 28:20  <u>"Our God and Savior Jesus Christ"</u>—2 Peter 1:1          "Thomas answered and said to Him, 'My Lord and my God!' Jesus said to him, 'Because you have seen Me, have you believed? Blessed are they who did not see, and yet believed.'"—John 20:28-29 (John 1:1-14,17-18; Col. 1:15-17; Heb. 13:8, etc.)</p>	<p><b>THE SON</b>          (Who 2),(Sense B2)</p> <p><b>HUMAN NATURE</b>          (What 2)          (Sense C)</p> <p>Yahweh God cannot be limited to a simple diagram</p> <p>In an analogous way, a triangle is one three-sided shape that is three points and this is not a contradiction. Therefore, <i>the purpose of the above diagram is simply and only to show that it is NOT a contradiction that Yahweh God is One What &amp; is Three Persons. Plus, the Son added a Human Nature (NOT the subtraction of God). These are NOT contradictions. A contradiction means "X cannot be both X and NOT X in the same time and sense."</i> Therefore, this does NOT go against reason but instead should bring us to worship. "God is love"—1 John 4:8&amp;16</p>	<p><b>THE FATHER IS GOD</b></p> <p>"who are loved by God the Father"—Jude 1b          "God our Father"—2 Cor.1:2 &amp; 1 Cor.1:13          "God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of Compassion and the God of all comfort."—2 Cor. 1:13          "God the Father"—Phil 2:1, etc.</p> <p><b>THE HOLY SPIRIT IS GOD</b></p> <p>"The Spirit gives gifts as He determines"—1 Cor. 12:11          "Do not grieve the Holy Spirit"—Eph. 4:30 (Isaiah 63:10)          "The Counselor, the Holy Spirit"—John 14:26          "No prophecy ever came by the will of man; instead men moved by the Holy Spirit spoke from God."—2 Peter 1:21, etc.</p> <p><b>THE FATHER IS NOT THE SON, THE SON IS NOT THE HOLY SPIRIT, ETC.</b></p> <p>"Set apart for the gospel of God— the gospel He [The Father] promised beforehand through His prophets in the Holy Scriptures regarding His Son [The Son], who as to his human nature was a descendant of David, and who through The Spirit of Holiness [The Holy Spirit] was declared with power to be the Son of God by his resurrection from the dead: Jesus Christ our Lord. Through him and for his name's sake, we received grace and apostleship to call people from among all the nations to the obedience that comes from faith."—Romans 1:1-5 (see John 14-17, Eph. 3:14-21, etc.)</p>



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.



# YAHWEH God is One God that is Three Persons (The Trinity)

YAHWEH GOD	Yahweh is the Only Savior	YAHWEH IS . . .
<p><b>There is Only One True God</b>  <i>"I am Yahweh and there is no other, apart from me there is no God"</i>-Isaiah 45:5 (see also Isaiah 43:10-13)  <i>"I am the First and I am the Last;</i> apart from me there is no God"          -Isaiah 44:6 (see also Isaiah 48:12)</p> <p><b>Yahweh is the Only True God's Name</b>  <i>"I am Yahweh; that is my name!"</i>-Isaiah 42:8 (also Exodus 3)  <i>"I am Yahweh, the God of all mankind"</i>-Jeremiah 32:26  <i>"Yahweh is God"</i>-Psalm 100:3</p> <p><b>We are to Love the One True God</b>  <i>"Yahweh our God, Yahweh is One. Love Yahweh your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength."</i>          -Deuteronomy 6:4-5 (see also Matt. 22:37-40)</p> <p><b>Yahweh is the Creator &amp; Sustainer of All that has Being</b>  <i>"This is what Yahweh, your Redeemer who formed you from the womb, says: I am Yahweh, who made everything"</i>-Is.44:24  <i>"Yahweh God made the earth and the heavens."</i>-Gen. 2:4  <i>"God, who gives life to all things"</i>-1 Tim.6:13  <i>"The God who made the world and everything in it—He is Lord of heaven and earth and does not live in shrines made by hands. Neither is He served by human hands, as though He needed anything, since He Himself gives everyone life and breath and all things . . . He is not far from each one of us. For in Him we live and move and have our being."</i>-Acts 17:24-28</p> <p><b>Yahweh Alone is Worthy of Worship</b>  <i>"I am Yahweh, that is My name; I will not give My glory to another or My praise to idols."</i>-Isaiah 42:8  <i>"I am Yahweh, and there is no other. I have not spoken in secret . . . I, Yahweh, speak the truth; I declare what is right. Gather together and come; assemble, you fugitives from the nations. Ignorant are those who carry about idols of wood, who pray to gods that cannot save. Declare what is to be, present it—let them take counsel together. Who foretold this long ago, who declared it from the distant past? Was it not I, Yahweh? And there is no God apart from me, a righteous God and a Savior; there is none but Me. Turn to me and be saved . . . for I am God, and there is no other . . . Before me every knee will bow; by me every tongue will swear."</i>          -Isaiah 45:18-25</p>	<p><i>"God also said to Moses, 'Say to the Israelites, 'Yahweh, the God of your fathers—the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob—has sent me to you.' This is my name forever, the name by which I am to be remembered from generation to generation."</i>          -Exodus 3:15  <i>"I am Yahweh and apart from me there is no savior."</i>          -Isaiah 43:11</p> <p><b>Yahweh is One God (What 1)</b>  <b>Yahweh is Three Persons (Who 1, Who 2, Who 3)</b>  <i>"the name [singular not plural, What 1] of the Father [Who 1] and the Son [Who 2] and of the Holy Spirit [Who 3]"</i>          -Matt.28:19          (see Deut. 6:4; Romans 1:1-5; 3 John 7; 2 Cor. 13:14; Eph. 1:17; Col. 1:12-14; John 1:1-18; 2 John 9; John 14-17, etc.)</p>	<p><b>YAHWEH IS . . .</b>  <i>"For since the creation of the world God's invisible qualities—his eternal power and divine nature—have been clearly seen, being understood from what has been made, so that men are without excuse."</i>-Romans 1:19-20</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Necessary (must be, has to be, cannot not be) Being (that which is)</b>  <i>"I AM"</i>-Exodus 3:14 (Jn. 8:58, Rev.4:11, Col.1:16-17, Acts 17:28, etc.)</li> <li><b>Immutable (unchanging)</b>  <i>"For I, Yahweh, do not change"</i>-Malachi 3:6 (Heb. 6:17-18, etc.)</li> <li><b>Non-temporal (not limited by time, eternal)</b>  <i>"The eternal God"</i>-Deut. 33:27 (Romans 1:20, Romans 16:26, etc.)</li> <li><b>Non-spatial (not limited by space, infinite, unlimited)</b>  <i>"God is Spirit"</i> -John 4:24  <i>"God's invisible qualities"</i>-Romans 1:20 (1 Tim.1:17, 6:16, etc.)</li> <li><b>Pure Actuality (perfect, no potentiality whatsoever)</b>  <i>"Yahweh, the Most High"</i>-Psalm 7:17  <i>"Immortal [incorruptible] God"</i>-Romans 1:23 (1 Tim.1:17, etc.)</li> <li><b>One (there is no other)</b>  <i>"I am Yahweh and there is no other, apart from me there is no God"</i>-Isaiah 45:5 (Isaiah 43:10-13, 1 Tim.1:17 etc.)</li> <li><b>Uncaused</b>  <i>"I am the First and I am the Last; apart from me there is no God"</i>          -Isaiah 44:6 (Exodus 3:14, etc.)</li> <li><b>Omnipresent (all present) Uncaused First cause of all that has being/given being/came to be/being given being, etc.</b> <i>"Our Lord and God . . . you created all things, and by your will they were created and have their being."</i>-Rev.4:11(Acts 17:24-28; Is. 66:2, etc.)</li> <li><b>Omniscient (all-knowing)</b>  <i>"God is greater than our hearts and knows all things."</i>-1 Jn.3:20 (Rom. 11:33, Matt. 6:8, 10:30, Isaiah 42:5-9, 44:6-8, etc.)</li> <li><b>Omnipotent (unlimited in power, all powerful)</b>  <i>"Ah, Sovereign Yahweh, you have made the heavens and the earth by your great power . . . Nothing is too hard for you."</i>          -Jer. 32:17 (Rev. 11:17, 15:3, etc.)</li> <li><b>Omnibenevolent (infinitely good, all good)</b>  <i>"Praise Yahweh Almighty, for Yahweh is good; His love endures forever."</i>-Jer. 33:11 (Eph. 3:16-21, etc.)</li> <li><b>Personal</b>  <i>"God is love"</i>-1 John 4:8&amp;16 (Matt. 5:45, John 3:16, Exodus 3:1-20, 1 Peter 5:7, etc.)</li> </ol>
<p><b>THE SON IS GOD</b>          Our sin separated us from Yahweh God; therefore, the Son added a Human Nature, Jesus which means "Yahweh saves" (Matt.1:21). He lived the perfect life, and died on the cross as a perfect atoning sacrifice for our sin, and the perfect demonstration of Yahweh God's love and justice (Jn. 3:16, Rom. 3:26, etc.), and rose again demonstrating that the Son is God. That is why He has the title of Immanuel/"God with us"(Matt.1:23)  <i>"Jesus Christ, the Son of God"</i>-Mark 1:1 (2 Cor. 1:19)  <i>"Christ Jesus: who, existing in very nature God . . . assuming the form of a servant, taking on the likeness of men. And when He had come as a man in His external form, He humbled Himself by becoming obedient to the point of death— even to death on a cross . . . so that at the name of Jesus [Yahweh Saves] every knee will bow . . . and every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord"</i>-Phil. 2:5-11  <i>"Before Abraham came into being, I AM."</i>-Jesus, John 8:58 (Ex.3:14)  <i>"I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End."</i>-Jesus, Rev.22:13  <i>"I am with you always"</i>-Jesus, Matt. 28:20  <i>"Our God and Savior Jesus Christ"</i>-2 Peter 1:1  <i>"Thomas answered and said to Him, 'My Lord and my God!'"</i> Jesus said to him, "Because you have seen Me, have you believed? Blessed are they who did not see, and yet believed."<i>"</i>-John 20:28-29 (John 1:1-14,17-18; Col. 1:15-17; Heb. 13:8, etc.)</p>	<p><b>THE SON</b>          (Who 2),(Sense B2)</p> <p><b>HUMAN NATURE</b>          (What 2)          (Sense C)</p> <p>Yahweh God cannot be limited to a simple diagram</p> <p>In an analogous way, a triangle is one three-sided shape that is three points and this is not a contradiction. Therefore, the purpose of the above diagram is simply and only to show that it is NOT a contradiction that Yahweh God is One What &amp; is Three Persons. Plus, the Son added a Human Nature (NOT the subtraction of God). These are NOT contradictions. A contradiction means "X cannot be both X and NOT X in the same time and sense." Therefore, this does NOT go against reason but instead should bring us to worship. "God is love"-1 John 4:8&amp;16</p>	<p><b>THE FATHER IS GOD</b>  <i>"who are loved by God the Father"</i>-Jude 1b  <i>"God our Father"</i> -2 Cor.1:2 &amp; 1 Cor.1:13  <i>"God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of Compassion and the God of all comfort."</i>-2 Cor. 1:13  <i>"God the Father"</i>-Phil 2:1, etc.</p> <p><b>THE HOLY SPIRIT IS GOD</b>  <i>"The Spirit gives gifts as He determines"</i>-1 Cor. 12:11  <i>"Do not grieve the Holy Spirit"</i>-Eph. 4:30 (Isaiah 63:10)  <i>"The Counselor, the Holy Spirit"</i>-John 14:26  <i>"No prophecy ever came by the will of man; instead men moved by the Holy Spirit spoke from God."</i>-2 Peter 1:21, etc.</p> <p><b>THE FATHER IS NOT THE SON, THE SON IS NOT THE HOLY SPIRIT, ETC.</b>  <i>"Set apart for the gospel of God— the gospel He [The Father] promised beforehand through His prophets in the Holy Scriptures regarding His Son [The Son], who as to his human nature was a descendant of David, and who through The Spirit of Holiness [The Holy Spirit] was declared with power to be the Son of God by his resurrection from the dead: Jesus Christ our Lord. Through him and for his name's sake, we received grace and apostleship to call people from among all the nations to the obedience that comes from faith."</i>-Romans 1:1-5 (see John 14-17, Eph. 3:14-21, etc.)</p>





## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.



“Those who know your name will trust in you, for you, Yahweh, have never forsaken those who seek you.”

-Psalm 9:10

**Yahweh:** is the name of the necessary, uncaused, personally-present, covenant keeping God, who “sees” the misery of His people, “hears” their cries, “enters into” their suffering, and delivers them from where they are to where He wants them to be.<sup>13</sup>

“I am **Yahweh**; that is my name! I will not yield my glory to another or my praise to idols.” -Isaiah 42:8

“Now Moses was tending the flock of Jethro his father-in-law, the priest of Midian, and he led the flock to the far side of the desert and came to **Horeb, the mountain of God**.<sup>2</sup> There the angel of **Yahweh** appeared to him in flames of fire from within a bush. Moses saw that though the bush was on fire it did not burn up.<sup>3</sup> So Moses thought, “I will go over and see this strange sight—why the bush does not burn up.”

<sup>4</sup> When **Yahweh** saw that he had gone over to look, **God** called to him from within the bush, “Moses! Moses!” And Moses said, “Here I am.”

<sup>5</sup> “Do not come any closer,” **God** said. “Take off your sandals, for the place where you are standing is holy ground.” <sup>6</sup> Then he said, “**I am the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob**.” At this, Moses hid his face, because he was afraid to look at **God**. <sup>7</sup> **Yahweh** said, “I have indeed seen the misery of my people in Egypt. I have heard them crying out because of their slave drivers, and I know their sorrows.” <sup>8</sup> So I have come down to rescue them from the hand of the Egyptians and to bring them up out of that land into a good and spacious land, a land flowing with milk and honey—the home of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites and Jebusites.

<sup>9</sup> And now the cry of the Israelites has reached me, and I have seen the way the Egyptians are oppressing them. <sup>10</sup> So now, go. I am sending you to Pharaoh to bring my people the Israelites out of Egypt.” <sup>11</sup> But Moses said to **God**, “Who am I, that I should go to Pharaoh and bring the Israelites out of Egypt?” <sup>12</sup> And **God** said, “**I will be with you**. And this will be the sign to you that it is I who have sent you: When you have brought the people out of Egypt, **you will worship God on this mountain**.” <sup>13</sup> Moses said to **God**, “Suppose I go to the Israelites and say to them, ‘The **God** of your fathers has sent me to you,’ and they ask me, ‘What is his name?’ Then what shall I tell them?” <sup>14</sup> **God** said to Moses, “**I AM WHO I AM**. This is what you are to say to the Israelites: ‘**I AM** has sent me to you.’” <sup>15</sup> **God** also said to Moses, “Say to the Israelites, ‘**Yahweh, the God of your fathers—the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob—has sent me to you.**’ **This is my name forever, the name by which I am to be remembered from generation to generation.**” <sup>16</sup> “Go, assemble the elders of Israel and say to them, ‘**Yahweh, the God of your fathers—the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob—appeared to me and said: I have watched over you and have seen what has been done to you in Egypt.**’” <sup>17</sup> And I have promised to bring you up out of your misery in Egypt into the land of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites and Jebusites—a land flowing with milk and honey.” <sup>18</sup> “The elders of Israel will listen to you. Then you and the elders are to go to the king of Egypt and say to him, ‘**Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews**, has met with us. Let us take a three-day journey into the desert to offer sacrifices to **Yahweh our God**.’” <sup>19</sup> But **I know** that the king of Egypt will not let you go unless a mighty hand compels him. <sup>20</sup> So **I will** stretch out my hand and strike the Egyptians with all the wonders that I will perform among them. After that, he will let you go.” -Exodus 3:1-20

“Hear, O Israel: **Yahweh** our **God, Yahweh is One**.<sup>5</sup> Love **Yahweh** your **God** with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength.” -Deut. 6:4

“Fear **Yahweh** your God, serve Him only” -Deut. 6:13 and Luke 4:8

<sup>13</sup> **Note #1:** Anthropomorphic terms such as “see,” “hear,” etc. are used in the Scriptures to help us relate to God in an analogous sense. Yahweh God is “not a man” (Numbers 23:19) instead Yahweh God is “Spirit” (John 4:23) and in Yahweh God “we live and move and have our being” (Acts 17:24). See the following pages for more on what Yahweh God is. **Note #2:** Yahweh God is Necessary (must be, has to be, cannot not be) Being (that which is; “I”= essence/that which-ness; “AM”= existence/is-ness) and because Yahweh’s Essence is completely identical to Yahweh’s Existence therefore Yahweh is a Necessary Being and in contrast we have a finite/dependent/limited being (that which is) because we could cease to be/do not have to be/etc. **Note #3:** because Yahweh God is in a category of one (there is no other Necessary Being) and because we are finite/limited/dependent beings who are *being given* there being we must speak about Yahweh God by analogy (John 3:12-13). For example we are moral in a finite way and Yahweh God is moral in an infinite way. To clarify further, there are different ways that we can speak about something or know something. We can know something univocally (meaning in a one to one correspondence – a completely similar way). We can know something equivocally (meaning in a completely different way). Or we can know something analogously (in a similar but different way). When it comes to knowing and speaking about Yahweh God because we are finite/limited/dependent beings, etc. and Yahweh God is in a category of one as a Necessary Being then we must know Yahweh God in a similar but different way (i.e. analogously) and not in a univocal way because we are not God and not in an equivocal way because there is some similarity (i.e.: we are moral and Yahweh God is moral, etc.). And because of this similarity but difference we use what is called the principle of intrinsic attribution - meaning we can predicate that which is intrinsic to us about Yahweh God, but the way in which this is predicated is different (finite or infinite). For example, Yahweh God (subject) is moral (predicate). In this example the predicate (moral) is predicated in an infinite way. While for us – humans (subject) are moral (predicate) the predicate is predicated in finite/limited/dependent way because we are not necessary being (i.e.: we could cease to be, we don’t have to be, etc.). [Typically in English Bibles in the Old Testament, uppercase LORD is used for *Yahweh* (the name of God) and Lord is used for *Adonai* (the title of Lord).]



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.

### YAHWEH GOD IS ONE GOD THAT IS THREE PERSONS (THE TRINITY)

<p><b>YAHWEH GOD</b></p> <p><b>There is Only One True God</b>          “I am Yahweh and there is no other, apart from me there is no God”-Isaiah 45:5 (see also Isaiah 43:10-13)  <u>“I am the First and I am the Last; apart from me there is no God”</u>-Isaiah 44:6 (see also Isaiah 48:12)</p> <p><b>Yahweh is the Only True God’s Name</b>          “I am Yahweh; that is my name!”-Isaiah 42:8 (also Exodus 3)          “I am Yahweh, the God of all mankind”-Jeremiah 32:26          “Yahweh is God”-Psalm 100:3</p> <p><b>We are to Love the One True God</b>          “Yahweh our God, Yahweh is One. Love Yahweh your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength.”-Deuteronomy 6:4-5 (see also Matt. 22:37-40)</p> <p><b>Yahweh is the Creator &amp; Sustainer of All that has Being</b>          “This is what Yahweh, your Redeemer who formed you from the womb, says: I am Yahweh, who made everything”-Is.44:24          “Yahweh God made the earth and the heavens.”-Gen. 2:4          “God, who gives life to all things”-1 Tim.6:13          “The God who made the world and everything in it—He is Lord of heaven and earth and does not live in shrines made by hands. Neither is He served by human hands, as though He needed anything, since He Himself gives everyone life and breath and all things . . . He is not far from each one of us. For in Him we live and move and have our being.”-Acts 17:24-28</p> <p><b>Yahweh Alone is Worthy of Worship</b>          “I am Yahweh, that is My name; I will not give My glory to another or My praise to idols.”-Isaiah 42:8  <u>“I am Yahweh, and there is no other. I have not spoken in secret . . . I, Yahweh, speak the truth; I declare what is right. Gather together and come; assemble, you fugitives from the nations. Ignorant are those who carry about idols of wood, who pray to gods that cannot save. Declare what is to be, present it—let them take counsel together. Who foretold this long ago, who declared it from the distant past? Was it not I, Yahweh? And <u>there is no God apart from me, a righteous God and a Savior; there is none but Me.</u> Turn to me and be saved . . . for I am God, and there is no other . . . Before me <u>every knee will bow; by me every tongue will swear.</u>”</u>-Isaiah 45:18-25</p>	<p><b>Yahweh is the Only Savior</b>          “God also said to Moses, ‘Say to the Israelites, ‘<u>Yahweh</u>, the God of your fathers—the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob—has sent me to you.’ This is <u>my name</u> forever, <u>the name</u> by which I am to be remembered from generation to generation.”-Exodus 3:15  <u>“I am Yahweh and apart from me there is no savior.”</u>-Isaiah 43:11</p> <p><b>Yahweh is One God (What 1)</b>  <b>Yahweh is Three Persons (Who 1, Who 2, Who 3)</b>          “the name [<i>singular not plural</i>, What 1] of the Father [Who 1] and the Son [Who 2] and of the Holy Spirit [Who 3]”-Matt.28:19          (see Deut. 6:4; Romans 1:1-5; 3 John 7; 2 Cor. 13:14; Eph. 1:17; Col. 1:12-14; John 1:1-18; 2 John 9; John 14-17, etc.)</p>	<p><b>YAHWEH IS . . .</b></p> <p>“For since the creation of the world God’s <u>invisible</u> qualities—his <u>eternal</u> power and <u>divine</u> nature—have been clearly seen, being understood from what has been made, so that men are without excuse.”-Romans 1:19-20</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Necessary (must be, has to be, cannot not be) Being (that which is)</b>          “I AM”-Exodus 3:14 (Jn. 8:58, Rev.4:11, Col.1:16-17, Acts 17:28, etc.)</li> <li><b>Immutable (unchanging)</b>          “For I, Yahweh, do not change”-Malachi 3:6 (Heb. 6:17-18, etc.)</li> <li><b>Non-temporal (not limited by time, eternal)</b>          “The <u>eternal</u> God”-Deut. 33:27 (Romans 1:20, Romans 16:26, etc.)</li> <li><b>Non-spatial (not limited by space, infinite, unlimited)</b>          “God is Spirit” -John 4:24          “God’s <u>invisible</u> qualities”-Romans 1:20 (1 Tim.1:17, 6:16, etc.)</li> <li><b>Pure Actuality (perfect, no potentiality whatsoever)</b>          “Yahweh, the Most High”-Psalm 7:17          “Immortal [incorruptible] God”-Romans 1:23 (1 Tim.1:17, etc.)</li> <li><b>One (there is no other)</b>          “I am Yahweh and there is no other, <u>apart from me there is no God</u>”-Isaiah 45:5 (Isaiah 43:10-13, 1 Tim.1:17 etc.)</li> <li><b>Uncaused</b>  <u>“I am the First and I am the Last; apart from me there is no God”</u>-Isaiah 44:6 (Exodus 3:14, etc.)</li> <li><b>Omnipresent (all present) Uncaused First cause of all that has being/given being/came to be/being given being, etc.</b> “Our Lord and God . . . you created all things, and by your will they were created and have their being.”-Rev.4:11(Acts 17:24-28; Is. 66:2, etc.)</li> <li><b>Omniscient (all-knowing)</b>  <u>“God is greater than our hearts and <u>knows all things.</u>”</u>-1 Jn.3:20 (Rom. 11:33, Matt. 6:8, 10:30, Isaiah 42:5-9, 44:6-8, etc.)</li> <li><b>Omnipotent (unlimited in power, all powerful)</b>          “Ah, Sovereign Yahweh, you have made the heavens and the earth by your great power . . . Nothing is too hard for you.”-Jer. 32:17 (Rev. 11:17, 15:3, etc.)</li> <li><b>Omnibenevolent (infinitely good, all good)</b>          “Praise Yahweh Almighty, for Yahweh is good; His love endures forever.”-Jer. 33:11 (Eph. 3:16-21, etc.)</li> <li><b>Personal</b>          “God is love”-1 John 4:8&amp;16 (Matt. 5:45, John 3:16, Exodus 3:1-20, 1 Peter 5:7, etc.)</li> </ol>
<p><b>THE SON IS GOD</b></p> <p>Our sin separated us from Yahweh God; therefore, the Son added a Human Nature, Jesus which means “Yahweh saves” (Matt.1:21). He lived the perfect life, and died on the cross as a perfect atoning sacrifice for our sin, and the perfect demonstration of Yahweh God’s love and justice (Jn. 3:16, Rom. 3:26, etc.), and rose again demonstrating that the Son is God. That is why He has the title of Immanuel/“God with us”(Matt.1:23)          “Jesus Christ, the Son of God”-Mark 1:1 (2 Cor. 1:19)          “Christ Jesus: who, existing in very nature God . . . assuming the form of a servant, taking on the likeness of men. And when He had come as a man in His external form, He humbled Himself by becoming obedient to the point of death— even to death on a cross . . . so that at the name of Jesus [Yahweh Saves] <u>every knee will bow . . . and every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord</u>”-Phil. 2:5-11          “Before Abraham came into being, <u>I AM.</u>”-Jesus, John 8:58 (Ex. 3:14)  <u>“I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End.”</u>-Jesus, Rev.22:13          “I am <u>with you always</u>”-Jesus, Matt. 28:20  <u>“Our God and Savior Jesus Christ”</u>-2 Peter 1:1          “Thomas answered and said to Him, ‘<u>My Lord and my God!</u>’ Jesus said to him, ‘Because you have seen Me, have you believed? Blessed are they who did not see, and yet believed.’” -John 20:28-29 (John 1:1-14,17-18; Col. 1:15-17; Heb. 13:8, etc.)</p>	<p><b>SON</b>          (Who 2),(Sense B2)</p> <p><b>HUMAN NATURE</b>          (What 2)          (Sense C)</p> <p>limited to a simple diagram</p> <p>In an analogous way, a triangle is one three-sided shape that is three points and this is not a contradiction. Therefore, <i>the purpose of the above diagram is simply and only to show that it is NOT a contradiction that Yahweh God is One What &amp; is Three Persons. Plus, the Son added a Human Nature (NOT the subtraction of God). These are NOT contradictions. A contradiction means “X cannot be both X and NOT X in the same time and sense.” Therefore, this does NOT go against reason but instead should bring us to worship. “God is love”</i>-1 John 4:8&amp;16</p>	<p><b>HOLY SPIRIT</b>          (Who 3),(Sense B3)</p> <p><b>THE FATHER IS GOD</b></p> <p>“who are loved by God the Father”-Jude 1b          “God our Father” -2 Cor.1:2 &amp; 1 Cor.1:13          “God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of Compassion and the God of all comfort.”-2 Cor. 1:13          “God the Father”-Phil 2:1, etc.</p> <p><b>THE HOLY SPIRIT IS GOD</b></p> <p>“The Spirit gives gifts as He determines”-1 Cor. 12:11          “Do not grieve the Holy Spirit”-Eph. 4:30 (Isaiah 63:10)          “The Counselor, the Holy Spirit”-John 14:26          “No prophecy ever came by the will of man; instead men moved by the Holy Spirit spoke from God.”-2 Peter 1:21, etc.</p> <p><b>THE FATHER IS NOT THE SON, THE SON IS NOT THE HOLY SPIRIT, ETC.</b></p> <p>“Set apart for the gospel of God— the gospel He [The Father] promised beforehand through His prophets in the Holy Scriptures regarding His Son [The Son], who as to his human nature was a descendant of David, and who through The Spirit of Holiness [The Holy Spirit] was declared with power to be the Son of God by his resurrection from the dead: Jesus Christ our Lord. Through him and for his name’s sake, we received grace and apostleship to call people from among all the nations to the obedience that comes from faith.”-Romans 1:1-5 (see John 14-17, Eph. 3:14-21, etc.)</p>





## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.



“For since the creation of the world  
God’s invisible qualities—His eternal power and divine nature—have been clearly seen,  
being understood from what has been made, so that men are without excuse.”—Romans 1:19-20

### **YAHWEH is**

**Yahweh is necessary being/immutable/non-temporal/non-spatial/pure actuality/  
one/uncaused/omnipresent first cause/omniscient/ omnipotent/omnibenevolent/personal**

#### **1. Necessary (must be, has to be, cannot not be) Being (that which is)<sup>14</sup>**

“I AM”-Exodus 3:14

“Before Abraham came into being, I AM.”-Jesus, John 8:58

“By your will they were created and have their being.”-Rev.4:11

“For in Him we live and move and have our being.”-Acts 17:28

“For in Him all things were created: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things have been created through Him and for Him. He is before all things, and in Him all things hold together.”-Col.1:16-17

“Has life in Himself”-John 5:26, etc.

#### **2. Immutable (unchanging)**

“For I, Yahweh, do not change”-Malachi 3:6

“But You are the same.”-Psalm 102:27

“whom there is no variation or shadow turnings.”-James 1:17

“God wanted to make the unchanging nature of His purpose very clear to the heirs of what was promised, He confirmed it with an oath. <sup>18</sup> God did this so that, by two unchangeable things in which it is impossible for God to lie, we who have fled to take hold of the hope offered to us may be greatly encouraged.”-Heb. 6:17-18

“God is not a man, that He should lie, nor a son of man, that He should repent; has He said, and will He not do it? Or has He spoken, and will He not make it good?”-Numbers 23:19, etc.

#### **3. Non-temporal (not limited by time, eternal)**

“The eternal God”-Deuteronomy 33:27

“eternal power”-Romans 1:20

“eternal God”-Romans 16:26, etc.

<sup>14</sup> **Note #2:** Yahweh God is Necessary (must be, has to be, cannot not be) Being (that which is; “I”= essence/that which-ness; “AM”= existence/is-ness) and because Yahweh’s Essence is completely identical to Yahweh’s Existence; therefore, Yahweh is a Necessary Being and in contrast we *have* a finite/dependent/limited being (that which is) because we could cease to be/do not have to be/etc. **Note #3 [also see Note #1 on page 4]:** because Yahweh God is in a *category of one* (there is no other necessary being) and because we are finite/limited/dependent beings who are *being given* there being [i.e.: Yahweh God is Necessary (must be, has to be, cannot not be) Being (that which is) and we *have* our finite being (that which is)] we must speak about Yahweh God by analogy (John 3:12-13, see “Note #1” for additional scripture references). For example, we are moral in a finite way and Yahweh God is moral in an infinite way. To clarify further, there are different ways that we can speak about something or know something. We can know something univocally (meaning in a one to one correspondence – a completely similar way). We can know something equivocally (meaning in a completely different way). Or we can know something analogously (in a similar but different way). When it comes to knowing and speaking about Yahweh God because we are finite/limited/dependent beings, etc. and Yahweh God is in a category of one as a necessary being then we must know Yahweh God in a similar but different way (i.e. analogously) and not in a univocal way because we are not God and not in an equivocal way because there is some similarity (i.e.: we are moral and Yahweh God is moral, etc.). And because of this similarity but difference we use what is called the principle of intrinsic attribution - meaning we can predicate that which is intrinsic to us about Yahweh God, but the way in which this is predicated is different (finite or infinite). For example, Yahweh God (subject) is moral (predicate). In this example the predicate (moral) is predicated in an infinite way. While for us – humans (subject) are moral (predicate) the predicate is predicated in finite/limited/dependent way because we are not necessary being (i.e.: we could cease to be, we don’t have to be, etc.).

To God be the Glory! This handout is free and is intended for encouragement and educational purposes.

For more information and for free handouts like this please go to: 1T3Life.org



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.



### 4. Non-spatial (not limited by space, infinite, unlimited)

“God is Spirit” –John 4:24

“God’s invisible qualities”-Romans 1:20

“The King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only God.”-1 Tim.1:17, etc.

### 5. Pure Actuality (perfect, no potentiality whatsoever)

“Yahweh, the Most High”-Psalm 7:17

“Immortal [incorruptible] God”-Romans 1:23

“Now to the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory forever and ever. Amen.”  
-1 Tim.1:17, etc.

### 6. One (there is no other)

“I am Yahweh and there is no other, apart from me there is no God.”-Isaiah 45:5

“You are my witnesses,” declares Yahweh, “and my servant whom I have chosen, so that you may know and believe me and understand that I am he. Before me no god was formed, nor will there be one after me. <sup>11</sup> I, even I, am Yahweh, and apart from me there is no savior. <sup>12</sup> I have revealed and saved and proclaimed— I, and not some foreign god among you. You are my witnesses,” declares Yahweh, “that I am God. <sup>13</sup> Yes, and from ancient days I am He. No one can deliver out of my hand. When I act, who can reverse it?”-Isaiah 43:10-13

“Hear, O Israel: Yahweh our God, Yahweh is One.”-Deuteronomy 6:4

Jesus answered, “It is written: ‘Worship the Lord your God and serve Him only.’”-Luke 4:8 (Deut. 6:13)

“The Only God.”-1 Timothy 1:17, etc.

### 7. Uncaused

“I am the First and I am the Last; apart from me there is no God”-Isaiah 44:24

“I AM”-Exodus 3:14

“Before Abraham came into being, I AM.”-Jesus, John 8:58, etc.

### 8. Omnipresent (all present) Uncaused First cause of all that has being/given being/came to be/being given being, etc.

“This is what Yahweh, your Redeemer who formed you from the womb, says: I am Yahweh, who made everything”-Isaiah 44:24

“God, who gives life to all things”-1 Tim.6:13

“The God who made the world and everything in it—He is Lord of heaven and earth and does not live in shrines made by hands. Neither is He served by human hands, as though He needed anything, since He Himself gives everyone life and breath and all things . . . He is not far from each one of us. For in Him we live and move and have our being.” -Acts 17:24-28

“You are worthy, our Lord and God, to receive glory and honor and power, for you created all things, and by your will they were created and have their being.”-Rev.4:11

“For by Him all things were created, both in the heavens and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities—all things have been created through Him and for Him. He is before all things, and in Him all things hold together.”-Colossians 1:16-17

“Has not my hand made all these things, and so they came into being?” declares Yahweh. “-Isaiah 66:2

“Can anyone hide from me in a secret place? Am I not everywhere in all the heavens and earth?” says Yahweh.”  
-Jeremiah 23:24, etc.



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.



### 9. Omniscient (all-knowing)

“God is greater than our hearts and knows all things.”-John 21:17

“Lord, You know all things.”-John 21:17

“Great is our Lord, and abundant in strength; His understanding is infinite.”-Psalm 147:5

“For My thoughts are not your thoughts, nor are your ways My ways,” declares Yahweh. <sup>9</sup>“For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are My ways higher than your ways and My thoughts than your thoughts.”-Isaiah 55:8-9

“Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!

How unsearchable His judgments and untraceable His ways!

For who has known the mind of the Lord? Or who has been His counselor?

Or who has ever first given to Him, and has to be repaid?

For from Him and through Him and to Him are all things.

To Him be the glory forever. Amen.”-Romans 11:33-36

“knows what you need before you ask”-Matthew 6:8

“I am Yahweh; that is my name! I will not give my glory to another or my praise to idols. See, the former things have taken place, and new things I declare; before they spring into being I announce them to you.”-Isaiah 42:8-9

“Thus says Yahweh, the King of Israel and his Redeemer, Yahweh Almighty: ‘I am the first and I am the last, and there is no God besides Me. Who is like Me? Let him proclaim and declare it; yes, let him recount it to Me in order, from the time that I established the ancient nation. And let them declare to them the things that are coming and the events that are going to take place.’<sup>8</sup> ‘Do not tremble and do not be afraid; have I not long since announced it to you and declared it? and you are My witnesses. Is there any God besides Me, or is there any other Rock? I know of none. I am Yahweh, that is My name; I will not give My glory to another, nor My praise to graven images.<sup>9</sup> All who make idols are nothing, and the things they treasure are worthless. Those who would speak up for them are blind; they are ignorant, to their own shame.<sup>10</sup> Who shapes a god and casts an idol, which can profit him nothing?<sup>11</sup> He and his kind will be put to shame; craftsmen are nothing but men. Let them all come together and take their stand; they will be brought down to terror and infamy.<sup>12</sup> The blacksmith takes a tool and works with it in the coals; he shapes an idol with hammers, he forges it with the might of his arm. He gets hungry and loses his strength; he drinks no water and grows faint.<sup>13</sup> The carpenter measures with a line and makes an outline with a marker; he roughs it out with chisels and marks it with compasses. He shapes it in the form of man, of man in all his glory, that it may dwell in a shrine.<sup>14</sup> He cut down cedars, or perhaps took a cypress or oak. He let it grow among the trees of the forest, or planted a pine, and the rain made it grow.<sup>15</sup> It is man’s fuel for burning; some of it he takes and warms himself, he kindles a fire and bakes bread. But he also fashions a god and worships it; he makes an idol and bows down to it.<sup>16</sup> Half of the wood he burns in the fire; over it he prepares his meal, he roasts his meat and eats his fill. He also warms himself and says, ‘Ah! I am warm; I see the fire.’<sup>17</sup> From the rest he makes a god, his idol; he bows down to it and worships. He prays to it and says, ‘Save me; you are my god.’<sup>18</sup> They know nothing, they understand nothing; their eyes are plastered over so they cannot see, and their minds closed so they cannot understand.<sup>19</sup> No one stops to think, no one has the knowledge or understanding to say, ‘Half of it I used for fuel; I even baked bread over its coals, I roasted meat and I ate. Shall I make a detestable thing from what is left? Shall I bow down to a block of wood?’<sup>20</sup> He feeds on ashes, a deluded heart misleads him; he cannot save himself, or say, ‘Is not this thing in my right hand a lie?’<sup>21</sup> Remember these things ... I have made you ... I will not forget you.<sup>22</sup> I have swept away your offenses like a cloud, your sins like the morning mist. Return to me, for I have redeemed you.”

-Isaiah 44:6-22



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.



### 9. Omniscient (all-knowing) – continued

“Before a word is on my tongue you know it completely, O Yahweh. <sup>5</sup> You hem me in—behind and before; you have laid your hand upon me. <sup>6</sup> Such knowledge is too wonderful for me, too lofty for me to attain. <sup>7</sup> Where can I go from your Spirit? Where can I flee from your presence? <sup>8</sup> If I go up to the heavens, you are there; if I make my bed in the depths, you are there. <sup>9</sup> If I rise on the wings of the dawn, if I settle on the far side of the sea, <sup>10</sup> even there your hand will guide me, your right hand will hold me fast. <sup>11</sup> If I say, ‘Surely the darkness will hide me and the light become night around me,’ <sup>12</sup> even the darkness will not be dark to you; the night will shine like the day, for darkness is as light to you. <sup>13</sup> For you created my inmost being; you knit me together in my mother’s womb. <sup>14</sup> I praise you because I am fearfully and wonderfully made; your works are wonderful, I know that full well. <sup>15</sup> My frame was not hidden from you when I was made in the secret place. When I was woven together in the depths of the earth, <sup>16</sup> your eyes saw my unformed body.”-Psalm 139:4-16

“Yahweh, the Creator...there is no limit to His understanding.”-Isaiah 40:28

“Nothing in all creation is hidden from God’s sight. Everything is uncovered and laid bare before the eyes of him to whom we must give account.”-Hebrews 4:13, etc.

### 10. Omnipotent (unlimited in power, all powerful)

“Ah, Sovereign Yahweh, you have made the heavens and the earth by your great power...Nothing is too hard for you.”-Jeremiah 32:17

“Yes, and from ancient days I am He. No one can deliver out of my hand. When I act, who can reverse it?”-Isaiah 43:13

“Lord God, the Almighty” –Rev.11:17

“Great and marvelous are your deeds, Lord God Almighty. Just and true are your ways, King of the ages.”-Rev.15:3, etc.

### 11. Omnibenevolent (infinitely good, all good)

“Praise Yahweh Almighty, for Yahweh is good; His love endures forever.”-Jeremiah 33:11

“Yahweh is good” -Psalm 34:8

“Good and upright is Yahweh; therefore, He instructs sinners in the way.”-Psalm 25:8, etc.

### 12. Personal

“God is love”-1 John 4:8

“Yahweh said . . . ‘I know their sorrows’”-Exodus 3:7

“He causes His sun to rise on the evil and the good, and sends rain on the righteous and the unrighteous.”-Matthew 5:45

“For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life.”-John 3:16

“Humble yourselves, therefore, under the mighty hand of God, so that He may exalt you at the proper time, <sup>7</sup> casting all your cares on Him, because He cares about you.”-1 Peter 5:6-7, etc.



## What is love?

**“This is how we know what love is: Jesus Christ laid down his life for us. And we ought to lay down our lives for our brothers.”—1 John 3:16**

“My command is this: Love each other as I have loved you. Greater love has no one than this, that he **lay down his life** for his friends.”—Jesus, John 15:12-13

“Beloved, let us love one another, for love is from God; and everyone who loves is born of God and knows God.<sup>8</sup> The one who does not love does not know God, for God is love.<sup>9</sup> By this the love of God was manifested in us, that God has sent His only begotten Son into the world so that we might live through Him.<sup>10</sup> This is love, not that we loved God, but that He loved us and sent His Son to be the propitiation for our sins.<sup>11</sup> Beloved, if God so loved us, we also ought to love one another.<sup>12</sup> No one has seen God at any time; if we love one another, God abides in us, and His love is perfected in us. [meaning we are being perfected if we love each other with the love that comes from God because we get to experience God’s Perfect Love in us towards each other and towards God]<sup>13</sup> By this we know that we abide in Him and He in us, because He has given us of His Spirit.<sup>14</sup> We have seen and testify that the Father has sent the Son to be the Savior of the world.<sup>15</sup> Whoever confesses that Jesus is the Son of God, God abides in him, and he in God.<sup>16</sup> We have come to know and have believed the love which God has for us. God is love, and the one who abides in love abides in God, and God abides in him.<sup>17</sup> By this, love is perfected with us, so that we may have confidence in the day of judgment; because as He is, so also are we in this world.<sup>18</sup> There is no fear in love; but perfect love casts out fear, because fear involves punishment, and the one who fears is not perfected in love.<sup>19</sup> We love, because He first loved us.<sup>20</sup> If someone says, ‘I love God,’ and hates his brother, he is a liar; for the one who does not love his brother whom he has seen, cannot love God whom he has not seen.<sup>21</sup> And this commandment we have from Him, that the one who loves God should love his brother also.”-1 John 4:7-21

Therefore, based on these scriptures we can describe love the following way: *Love is the giving of one's personhood to another. Perfect Love is the perfect giving of one's complete personhood to another.* Yahweh God is Perfect Love. The Father is Yahweh God, the Son is Yahweh God, and the Holy Spirit is Yahweh God;<sup>15</sup> therefore, each Person is perfectly giving of their complete Personhood to Each Other.

Yahweh God *is* Necessary (must be, has to be, cannot not be) Being (that which is) therefore Yahweh God is *not* dependent on anything. Furthermore, because Yahweh God *is* Necessary Being and *is* Perfect Love. As a result, Yahweh God must be more than one Person *prior* to creation; otherwise, Yahweh God would be dependent upon creation in-order to love. However, Yahweh God is *NOT* dependent on creation to love because Yahweh God *is* Necessary Being and is Perfect Love and is three Persons. As Jesus [The Son] stated to The Father: “You loved Me before the foundation of the world”(John 17:24).

[illegible]

“Satisfy us in the morning with **Your unfailing love**, that we may sing for joy and be glad all our days.”-Psalm 90:14

“Put your hope in Yahweh, for with Yahweh is **unfailing love** and with Him is full redemption.”  
-Psalm 130:7

**"Give thanks to Yahweh, for He is good. His love endures forever."-Psalm 136:1**

<sup>15</sup> Yahweh is One God (What 1)Yahweh is Three Persons (Who 1, Who 2, Who 3), “the name [*singular not plural*, What 1] of the Father [Who 1] and the Son [Who 2] and of the Holy Spirit [Who 3]”-Matt.28:19 (see also Romans 1:1-5, 3 John 7,2 Cor. 13:14, Eph. 1:17, Col. 1:12-14, John 14-17, 2 John 9, John 14-17, etc.). See the section titled “YAHWEH GOD IS ONE GOD THAT IS THREE PERSONS” for scriptures showing the Father is Yahweh God, the Son is Yahweh God, and the Holy Spirit is Yahweh God and how this is NOT a contradiction.



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.



Because Yahweh God is necessary being/immutable/non-temporal/non-spatial/pure actuality/one/uncaused/omnipresent first cause/omniscient/omnipotent/omnibenevolent/personal. Therefore, Yahweh is Perfect Love/Perfect Goodness/Perfect Holiness/Perfect Righteousness/Perfect Truth/Perfect Wisdom/Perfectly Just/Perfect Joy/Perfect Peace/Perfect Kindness/Perfect Faithfulness/Perfect Patience/Perfect Grace/Perfect Mercy/Perfect Hope

### **Perfect Love**

“God is love”-1 John 4:8, 4:16, etc.

### **Perfect Goodness**

“Yahweh is good”-Jer.33:11, etc.

### **Perfect Holiness**

“Yahweh our God is holy”-Psalm 99:9, etc.

### **Perfect Righteousness**

“He is righteous and true”-Deut. 32:4, etc.

### **Perfect Truth**

“I am the Way and the Truth and the Life.”-John 14:6, etc.

### **Perfect Wisdom**

“The only wise God”-Romans 16:27, etc.

### **Perfectly Just**

“All His ways are entirely just”-Deut. 3:4, etc.

### **Perfect Joy**

“In Your presence is fullness of joy”-Psalm 16:11, etc.

### **Perfect Peace**

“God himself, the God of peace”-1 Thessalonians 5:23, etc.

### **Perfect Kindness**

“God’s kindness leads you toward repentance”-Romans 2:4, etc.

### **Perfect Faithfulness**

“God is faithful”- 1 Cor. 10:13, etc.

### **Perfect Patience**

“He is patient” -2 Peter 3:9, etc.

### **Perfect Grace**

“Yahweh your God is gracious and compassionate”-2 Chronicles 30:9, etc.

### **Perfect Mercy**

“In His great mercy He has given us new birth into a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead”-1 Peter 1:3, etc.

### **Perfect Hope**

“May the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace as you trust in him, so that you may overflow with hope by the power of the Holy Spirit”-Rom. 15:13, etc.

***Therefore, Yahweh God is worthy of all worship and all our trust:***

***“They fell facedown ... and worshiped God,<sup>12</sup> saying: Amen! Blessing and glory and wisdom and thanksgiving and honor and power and strength be to our God forever and ever. Amen.”-Rev. 7:11-12***

***“I pray that out of his glorious riches he may strengthen you with power through His Spirit in your inner being,<sup>17</sup> so that Christ may dwell in your hearts through faith. And I pray that you, being rooted and established in love,<sup>18</sup> may have power, together with all the saints, to grasp how wide and long and high and deep is the love of Christ,<sup>19</sup> and to know [apprehend] this love that surpasses knowledge [comprehension]—that you may be filled to the measure of all the fullness of God.<sup>20</sup> Now to him who is able to do immeasurably more than all we ask or imagine, according to his power that is at work within us,<sup>21</sup> to him be glory in the church and in Christ Jesus throughout all generations, for ever and ever! Amen.”-Ephesians 3:16-21***





## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.

### How great is our God!

“Yahweh—Yahweh is a compassionate and gracious God, slow to anger and rich in faithful love and truth,<sup>7</sup> maintaining faithful love to a thousand generations, forgiving wrongdoing, rebellion, and sin. But He will not leave the guilty unpunished”—Exodus 34:6-7

“Therefore, **Yahweh longs to be gracious to you**, and therefore **He waits on high to have compassion on you**. For the **Yahweh is a God of justice; how blessed are all those who long for Him**.”—Isaiah 30:18

“Preserve me, O God, for I take refuge in You.<sup>2</sup> I said to Yahweh, “**You are my Lord; I have no good besides You**.”...<sup>8</sup> I have set Yahweh continually before me; because He is at my right hand, I will not be shaken.<sup>11</sup> You will make known to me the path of life; **in Your presence is fullness of joy**; in Your right hand **there are pleasures forever**.”—Psalm 16:1-2,8,11

“**For I will proclaim Yahweh’s name. Declare the greatness of our God!** The Rock—His work is perfect; all His ways are entirely just. A faithful God, without prejudice, He is righteous and true.”—Deuteronomy 3:3-4

“**Yahweh, the Creator...there is no limit to His understanding**.”—Isaiah 40:28

“Thus says **Yahweh God, who created the heavens and stretched them out, who spread out the earth and its vegetation, who gives breath to the people on it and spirit to those who walk in it,**<sup>6</sup> “**I am Yahweh, I have called You in righteousness, I will also hold You by the hand and watch over You, and I will appoint you as a covenant to the people, As a light to the nations,**<sup>7</sup> **To open blind eyes, to bring out prisoners from the dungeon and those who dwell in darkness from the prison.**<sup>8</sup> “**I am Yahweh, that is My name; I will not give My glory to another, nor My praise to graven images.**<sup>9</sup> “Behold, the former things have come to pass, now I declare new things; before they spring forth I proclaim them to you.”—Isaiah 42:5-9

### The Good News is that Yahweh Saves!

Yahweh is

The Loving Creator,  
The Ultimate Lord & King,  
The Law Giver,  
The Final Judge,  
and The Only Savior!

“**I am Yahweh and apart from me there is no savior**.”—Isaiah 43:11

“Then I saw another angel flying in midair, and he had the **eternal gospel to proclaim to those who live on the earth—to every nation, tribe, language and people.**<sup>7</sup> He said in a loud voice, ‘**Fear God and give him glory, because the hour of his judgment has come. Worship him who made the heavens, the earth, the sea and the springs of water.**’”—Revelation 14:6-7

“He is the blessed and **only Sovereign, the King of kings, and the Lord of lords,**<sup>16</sup> **the Only One who has immortality, dwelling in unapproachable light; no one has seen or can see Him, to Him be honor and eternal might. Amen.**”—1 Timothy 6:15-16

“**Yahweh is our Judge, Yahweh is our Lawgiver, Yahweh is our King; He will save us**”—Isaiah 33:22

**“Yahweh, the Creator.”**

-Isaiah 40:28

**“Yahweh is our Judge,  
Yahweh is our Lawgiver,  
Yahweh is our King;  
He will save us”**

-Isaiah 33:22

The memory aid map on the next pages is  
a detailed explanation from the Scriptures  
to help you better understand  
*The Good News* and how it is truly good news!

Note: The very next page – “The Good News” has been adapted and expanded upon  
from the class Theology of the Gospel (originally developed by Jeff Dodge)

Located at 1T3Life.org is a PDF color version of the  
*The Gift of The Good News* handout  
located under the “The Good News” button.

**Loving Creator**

"The God who made the world and everything in it"

-Acts 17:24a

**The Ultimate Lord & King**

"is the Lord of heaven and earth and does not live in temples built by hands. And he is not served by human hands, as if he needed anything, because he himself gives all men life and breath and everything else."

-Acts 17:24b-25

**The Law Giver & Final Judge**

"In the past God overlooked such ignorance, but now he commands all people everywhere to repent. For he has set a day when he will judge the world with justice by the man he has appointed. He has given proof of this to all men by raising him from the dead."

-Acts 17:30-31

**THE PROBLEM****We Have All Broken God's Law by Our Sin**

"No one is [essentially and perfectly morally] good—except God only. You know the commandments: Do not commit adultery, do not murder, do not steal, do not witness falsely, honor your father and your mother."

- Jesus

Luke 18:19b-20

"You have heard that it was said to the people long ago, 'Do not murder, and anyone who murders will be subject to judgment.' But I tell you that anyone who is angry with his brother will be subject to judgment."

- Jesus

Matthew 5:21-22a

"You have heard that it was said, 'Do not commit adultery.' But I tell you that anyone who looks at a woman lustfully has already committed adultery with her in his heart."

- Jesus

Matthew 5:27-28

"For out of the heart come evil thoughts, murder, adultery, sexual immorality, theft, false testimony, slander."

- Jesus

Matthew 15:19

**Willfully Ignorant**

"The wrath of God is being revealed from heaven against all the godlessness and wickedness of men who suppress the truth by their wickedness, since what may be known about God is plain to them, because God has made it plain to them. For since the creation of the world God's invisible qualities – His eternal power and divine nature – have been clearly seen, being understood from what has been made, so that men are without excuse."

-Romans 1:18-20

**Passionately Rebellious**

"For although they knew God, they neither glorified him as God nor gave thanks to him, but their thinking became futile and their foolish hearts were darkened. Although they claimed to be wise, they became fools and exchanged the glory of the immortal God for images made to look like mortal man and birds and animals and reptiles."

-Romans 1:21-23

**Condemned to Death**

"But because of your stubbornness and your unrepentant heart, you are storing up wrath against yourself for the day of God's wrath, when His righteous judgment will be revealed."

-Romans 2:5

**THE GOOD NEWS****Solution - God Paid The Penalty for Our Sin**

Jesus Christ "died for our sins according to the Scriptures, he was buried, and he was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures."

-1 Corinthians 15:3-4

"God demonstrates His own love for us in this: While we were still sinners, Christ died for us."

-Romans 5:8

"God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God."

-2 Corinthians 5:21

"God did this to demonstrate His justice . . . so as to be just and the one who justifies those who have faith in Jesus."

-Romans 3:25b-26

"For God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal life. For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but to save the world through him. Whoever believes in him is not condemned, but whoever does not believe stands condemned already because he has not believed in the name of God's one and only Son."

- Jesus

-John 3:16-21

**Repent & Believe**

"The time has come," Jesus said.

"The kingdom of God is near.

**Repent and believe the good news!"**

-Mark 1:15

**DECISION****Refuse It & Perish**

"But unless you repent, you too will all perish."

- Jesus

Luke 13:5

**HOW WILL YOU RESPOND?**

"Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life, but whoever rejects the Son will not see life, for God's wrath remains on him."

-John 3:36



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.



God's Solution - God paid the penalty for our Sin:

**Jesus Christ "died for our sins according to the Scriptures, he was buried, and he was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures."** -1 Corinthians 15:3-4

Eternal life is a gift from God. It *cannot* be earned:

**"For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord."** -Romans 6:23

Eternal life *cannot* be earned by any amount of good works. It is only by faith [trust] in Jesus as Lord and Savior that we can have eternal life:

**"By grace [unearned favor] you have been saved through faith [trust in Jesus Christ as Lord and Savior]—and this not from yourselves, it is the gift of God—not by works, so that no one can boast."** -Ephesians 2:8-9

**"If you confess with your mouth that 'Jesus is Lord,' and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved."** -Romans 10:9-10

In Jesus Christ you are permanently forgiven forever by God:

**"God made him [Jesus Christ] who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him [Jesus Christ] we might become the righteousness of God."** -2 Corinthians 5:21

You can know that you have eternal life:

**"God has given us eternal life, and this life is in His Son. He who has the Son has life; he who does not have the Son of God does not have life. I write these to you who believe in the name of the Son of God so that you may know that you have eternal life."** -1 John 5:9-13

Nothing can separate you from God's love in Jesus Christ:

**"Neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor things present, nor things to come, nor powers, nor height, nor depth, nor any other created thing, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord."** -Romans 8:38-39



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.

### Four Important Terms to Understand



**Sin:** this is hostility towards God in our affections, our mind, and our will. Sin is the worship of yourself, the worship of others, and the worship of any created thing in this world.

**“For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God.”**

- Romans 3:23

**“The mind set on the flesh is hostile toward God; for it does not subject itself to the Law of God, for it is not even able to do so; and those who are in the flesh cannot please God.”**

- Romans 8:7



**Justification:** takes place when *the penalty for sin* (past, present, and future) has been paid for in Jesus Christ – this happens when you, by the grace of God, repent of your sins and trust in Jesus Christ as your Lord and Savior - you are then declared “NOT guilty!” and you are justified in Christ.

**“Therefore, since we are justified [past tense] by faith,  
we have peace [present tense] with God  
through our Lord Jesus Christ.”**

- Romans 5:1



**Sanctification:** this is the cleansing process that continues from when you are justified until you are glorified. During this time *the power of sin* in your life to control you has been broken and as you grow in Christ you experience the blessing of being washed by The Holy Spirit through God’s Word.

**“Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth;  
Your Word is Truth.”**

- Jesus, John 17:17



**Glorification:** this happens once you are in heaven and it is there with God that you are completely set free from *the presence of sin* in your life. Once you are justified in Christ, God already knows you as glorified in Christ because God knows both the past, the present, and the future. Thus, we can approach God with confidence because we can know that God already knows us as perfect in Christ.

**“Those He [God] justified, He also glorified.”**

- Romans 8:28-30

**“He [God] will wipe every tear from their eyes.  
There will be no more death or mourning or crying or pain,  
for the old order of things has passed away.”**

- Revelation 21:4

**“The Lord will rescue me from every evil deed  
and will bring me safely into His Heavenly Kingdom,  
to Him be the glory for all time. Amen.”**

- 2 Timothy 4:18



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.



### “God is love”

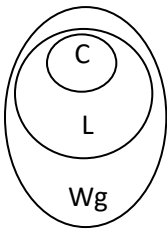
-1 John 4:8, 4:16

#### **Nothing Can Separate Us from the Love of God:** **The Logic of Romans 8:28-39**

##### **Romans 8:28**

All in the category of those who love God are in the category where all things work together for good.  
All those who have been called according to his purpose are in the category of those who love God.  
Therefore, all those who have been called according to his purpose are in the category where all things work together for good.

All L are Wg  
All C are L  
Therefore, all C are Wg



##### **Romans 8:29-30**

All those in the category that God foreknew are in the category of those He predestined to be conformed to the image of His Son.  
All in the category of those He predestined to be conformed to the image of His son are in the category of those He called.  
All in the category of those He called are in the category of those He justified.  
All in the category of those He justified are in the category of those He glorified.  
Therefore, all those in the category God foreknew are in the category of those He glorified.

F are Pc  
Pc are C  
C are J  
J are G  
Therefore, F are G

##### **Romans 8:31**

If God is for us then no one can be against us.  
God is for us.  
Therefore, no one can be against us.

If G then ~A  
G  
Therefore, ~A





## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.



### The Logic of Romans 8:28-39 (continued)

#### **Romans 8:32**

If God did not spare His own Son (but delivered Him up for us all) then He will freely give us all things.  
God did not spare His own Son (but delivered Him up for us all).  
Therefore, He will freely give us all things.

If S&D then F  
S&D  
Therefore, F

#### **Romans 8:33**

If God is the one who justifies then it is not the case that someone can bring a charge against God's elect.  
God is the one who justifies.  
Therefore, it is not the case that someone can bring a charge against God's elect.

If (G is J) then ~C  
(G is J)  
Therefore, ~C

#### **Romans 8:34**

If Christ Jesus is He who died & He who is risen & He who is at the right hand of God & He who intercedes for us then it is not the case that someone can condemn God's elect.  
Christ Jesus is He who died & He who is risen & He who is at the right hand of God & He who intercedes for us.  
Therefore, it is not the case that someone can condemn God's elect.

If [J is (D&R&H&I)] then ~C  
[J is (D&R&H&I)]  
Therefore, ~C

#### **Romans 8:35-39**

If it is the case that something can separate us from the love of Christ then it is the case that tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword, or death, or life, or angles, or principalities, or things present, or things to come, or powers, or height, or depth, or any other created thing could separate us from the love of Christ.  
It is **NOT** the case that tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword, or life, or angles, or principalities, or things present, or things to come, or powers, or height, or depth, or any other created thing could separate us from the love of Christ [by verse 37 & verses 38-39]  
Therefore, it is **NOT** the case that something can separate us from the love of Christ.

If S then (T or D or P or F or N or P or S or D or L or A or P or Tp or Tc or Po or H or De or Ac)  
~(T or D or P or F or N or P or S or D or L or A or P or Tp or Tc or Po or Ho or De or Ac)  
Therefore, ~S



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.

### Understanding “Pre”destination – A Doctrine of Assurance

Note: It is extremely important to start with God and who God is. We must first start with God and who God is or we end up making God into our image, or the image of an angel, or a fatalistic deity, etc. This is very dangerous! Therefore, we must start with God first!

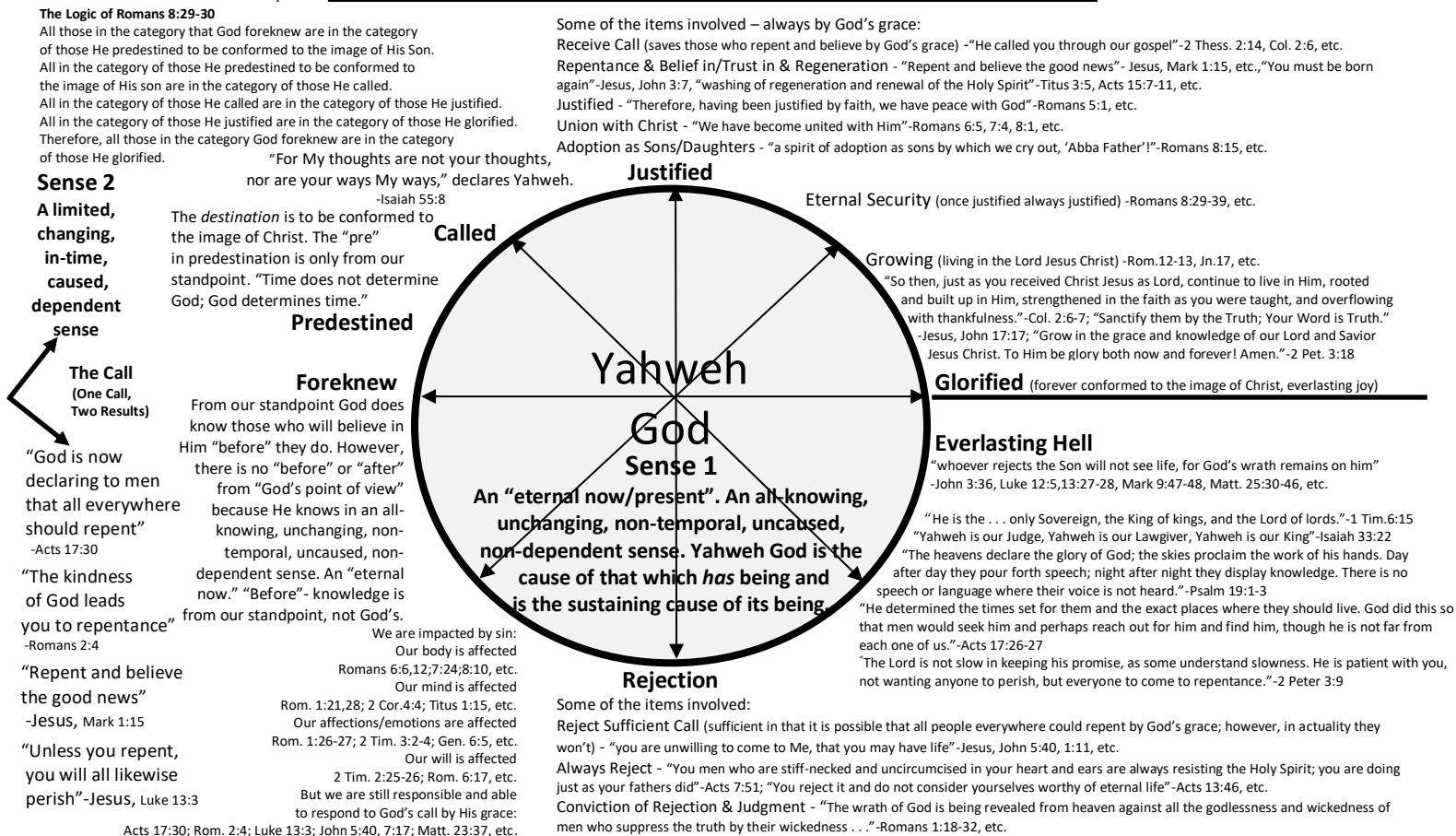
**YAHWEH GOD IS . . .**

1. **Necessary (must be, has to be, cannot not be) Being (that which is)** “I AM”-Exodus 3:14 (Jn. 8:58, Rev 4:11, Col. 1:16-17, Acts 17:28, etc.)
2. **Immutable (unchanging)** “For I, Yahweh, do not change”-Malachi 3:6 (Psalm 102:27, etc.)
3. **Non-temporal (not limited by time, eternal)** “The eternal God”-Deuteronomy 33:27 (Romans 1:20, Romans 16:26, etc.)
4. **Non-spatial (not limited by space, infinite, unlimited)** “God is Spirit”-John 4:24; “God’s invisible qualities”-Romans 1:20 (1 Tim.1:17, 6:16, etc.)
5. **Pure Actuality (perfect, no potentiality whatsoever)** “Yahweh, the Most High”-Psalm 7:17; “Immortal [incorruptible] God”-Romans 1:23 (1 Tim.1:17, etc.)
6. **One (there is no other)** “I am Yahweh and there is no other, apart from me there is no God”-Isaiah 45:5 (Isaiah 43:10-13, 1 Tim.1:17 etc.)
7. **Uncaused** “I am the First and I am the Last; apart from me there is no God”-Isaiah 44:6 (Exodus 3:14, etc.)
8. **Omnipresent (all present) Uncaused First cause of all that has being/given being/came to be/being given being, etc.** “The God who made the world and everything in it . . . in Him we live and move and have our being.”-Acts 17:24,28 (Rev. 4:11, Is. 66:2, etc.)
9. **All-knowing (Omniscient)** “God is greater than our hearts and knows all things.”-1 Jn.3:20 (Rom. 11:33, Matt. 6:8, 10:30, Isaiah 42:5-9, 44:6-8, etc.)
10. **Omnipotent (unlimited in power, all powerful)** “Ah, Sovereign Yahweh, you have made the heavens and the earth by your great power. . . Nothing is too hard for you.”-Jer. 32:17 (Rev. 11:17, 15:3, etc.)
11. **Omnibenevolent (infinitely good, all good)** “Praise Yahweh Almighty, for Yahweh is good; His love endures forever.”-Jer. 33:11 (Eph. 3:16-21, 1 Jn. 4:7, etc.)
12. **Personal** “God is love”-1 John 4:8&16 (Matt. 5:45, John 3:16, Exodus 3:1-20, 1 Peter 5:6-8, etc.)

Because Yahweh God is necessary being/immutable/non-temporal/non-spatial/pure actuality/one/uncaused/omnipresent first cause/ omniscient/ omnipotent/omnibenevolent/personal; therefore, Yahweh is Perfect Love/Perfect Goodness/Perfect Holiness/Perfect Righteousness/Perfect Truth/ Perfect Wisdom/Perfectly Just/ Perfect Joy/Perfect Peace/Perfect Kindness/Perfect Faithfulness/Perfect Patience/Perfect Grace/Perfect Mercy/Perfect Hope . . .

Because God is all-knowing, there is no limit to what He can know. Since God is unchanging, no aspect of His Being changes. He does not learn, nor does He go through a process in His knowledge (either chronologically or discursively). If God learned then His knowledge would change, and if God went through a process in His knowledge then He would change. Therefore, God’s knowledge does not change. Because God is Necessary Being and God is non-temporal, meaning there is no past or future in God, and because God is immutable (unchanging) and because God is omniscience (all-knowing) then God must know everything all at “once”, in an “eternal/timeless now/present”. Because God is Necessary Being and is uncaused He is not dependent upon anything and the existence of everything that *has* being depends on God, and because God is non-temporal then God is not bound by time. Therefore, as it has been stated it: “Time does not determine God; God determines time.” And because God determines time and because He does not change and because He is all knowing, then whatever God determines He knows and whatever He knows He determines.

As it has been summarized in the past: “**GOD KNOWINGLY DETERMINES AND DETERMINELY KNOWS” WHAT WE WILL CHOOSE TO DO.**



“God knowingly determines and determinately knows” what we will choose to do. This is NOT a contradiction because God knows and acts in a different sense (Sense 1) than how we know and act (Sense 2). A contradiction is “X cannot be both X and not X in the same time and sense.” It is important to note that God does NOT “see into the future and then respond to our choices.” This would make God dependent on our choices and God is NOT dependent on anything. And it is important to note that God does NOT “decide IN time and then it happens in time” because God is non-temporal (not limited by time/eternal/timeless). In addition, this false idea that God “decides IN time and then it happens in time” tends to fall into the false idea of fatalism. Also, God does NOT decide something and then know it and God does NOT know something and then act; instead, God always acts and knows in accordance with who He is. As one theologian put it “God knowingly determines and determinately knows those who will accept his grace as well as those who will reject him.” Some analogies may be helpful: (A) If we walk around a giant pillar, we change in our relationship to the pillar but the pillar does not change. (B) If the wind is blowing in one direction and we change our direction from walking against the wind to walking with the wind the wind did not change instead we changed in our relationship to the wind. This wind analogy can be helpful in understanding love and wrath. When we move against a powerful wind we experience its wrath and when we move with it we experience its blessing. God is unchanging love; therefore, in an analogous way when we go against God we experience His loving wrath and if we repent/turn and go with God we experience the blessing of His love. (C) If you think of a parade going down a street - God knows the beginning of the parade, the middle of the parade, the end of the parade, etc. and God is the sustaining cause of its being. Note: with all analogies (including diagrams) they are only analogies and are not the real thing and therefore it is important not to push the analogy too far. [Also, see Note #1, Note #2, and Note #3 in the section on the name of God in this manual.] [To God be the Glory! For more information and for free handouts like this please go to: 1T3Life.org.]



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.

**Our response should be worship, for Yahweh God is worthy of all glory and exaltation!**

### **Glorify Yahweh**

“Whatever you do, do it all for the glory of God.”-1 Corinthians 10:31b

“Ascribe to Yahweh the glory due His Name.”-Psalm 96:8

“Not to us, Yahweh, not to us but to Your Name be glory, because of Your love and faithfulness”-Psalm 115:1

“Fear God and give Him glory, because the hour of his judgment has come. Worship Him who made the heavens, the earth, the sea and the springs of water.”-Revelation 14:6-7

“Who will not fear you, O LORD, and glorify your Name? For You alone are holy, for all nations will come and worship before you, for Your righteous acts have been revealed.”- Revelation 15:4

“Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!  
How unsearchable His judgments and untraceable His ways!  
For who has known the mind of the LORD?  
Or who has been His counselor?  
Or who has ever first given to Him, and has to be repaid?  
For from Him and through Him and to Him are all things.  
To Him be the glory forever.  
Amen.”

-Romans 11:32-36

### **Exalt Yahweh**

“Yahweh, You are my God; I will exalt You, I will give thanks to Your name; for You have worked wonders, plans formed long ago, with perfect faithfulness.”-Isaiah 25:1

“You are my God, and I will praise you; you are my God, and I will exalt you.”-Psalm 118:28

“Give thanks to Yahweh, call on His name. Make known His deeds among the peoples; make them remember that His name is exalted.”-Isaiah 12:4

“Yahweh lives, and blessed be my rock; and exalted be the God of my salvation.”-Psalm 18:46

“Be exalted, Yahweh, in Your strength; we will sing and praise Your power.”-Psalm 21:13

“O magnify Yahweh with me, and let us exalt His name together.”-Psalm 34:3

“Cease striving and know that I am God; I will be exalted among the nations, I will be exalted in the earth.”-Psalm 46:10

“Let them praise the name of Yahweh, for His name alone is exalted; His glory is above earth and heaven.”-Psalm 148:13

“Be exalted above the heavens, O God; let Your glory be above all the earth.”-Psalm 57:11

“Exalt Yahweh our God  
and worship . . .  
Holy is He.”

-Psalm 99:5



## Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.

### It is only because of the holy loving grace in Jesus Christ that we can love God

#### Because of Jesus Christ: God has adopted me as His child and made me an heir of His Kingdom

"In the same way we also, when we were children, were in slavery under the elemental forces of the world. <sup>4</sup> When the time came to completion, God sent His Son, born of a woman, born under the law, <sup>5</sup> to redeem those under the law, **so that we might receive adoption as sons.** <sup>6</sup> And **because you are sons, God has sent the Spirit of His Son into our hearts, crying, "Abba, Father!"** <sup>7</sup> So you are no longer a slave but a son, and if a son, then an heir through God."-Galatians 4:3-7

"Yahweh your God is in the midst of you, a Mighty One, a Savior [Who saves]! **He will rejoice over you with joy;** He will rest [in silent satisfaction] and **in His love** He will be silent and make no mention [of past sins, or even recall them]; **He will exult over you with singing.**"-Zephaniah 3:17

"I am the Alpha and the Omega, the Beginning and the End. **To him who is thirsty I will give to drink without cost from the spring of the water of life.**"-Jesus, Revelation 21:6

"**Unless Yahweh builds the house,** they labor in vain who build it; **unless Yahweh guards the city,** the watchman keeps awake in vain. <sup>2</sup> It is vain for you to rise up early, to retire late, to eat the bread of painful labors; **for He gives to His beloved even in his sleep.**"-Psalm 127:1-2

"There you saw how **Yahweh your God carried you, as a father carries his son,** all the way you went until you reached this place."-Deuteronomy 1:31

#### Because of Jesus Christ: we are known by God as glorified (perfect and blameless)

##### **Romans 8:29-30**

All those in the category that God foreknew are in the category of those He predestined to be conformed to the image of His Son.

All in the category of those He predestined to be conformed to the image of His son are in the category of those He called.

All in the category of those He called are in the category of those He justified.

**All in the category of those He justified are in the category of those He glorified.**

Therefore, **all those in the category God foreknew are in the category of those He glorified.**

#### Because of Jesus Christ: nothing can separate us from His love

##### **Romans 8:35-39**

If it is the case that something can separate us from the love of Christ then it is the case that tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword, or death, or life, or angles, or principalities, or things present, or things to come, or powers, or height, or depth, or any other created thing could separate us from the love of Christ.

It is **NOT** the case that tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword, or life, or angles, or principalities, or things present, or things to come, or powers, or height, or depth, or any other created thing could separate us from the love of Christ [by verse 37 & verses 38-39]

Therefore, **it is NOT the case that something can separate us from the love of Christ.**

#### Because of Jesus Christ: we can daily enjoy His present, active, and continuous peace

"Therefore, since we are justified [acquitted, declared righteous, and given a right standing with God]] through faith, let us [grasp the fact that we] have [the peace of reconciliation to hold and to enjoy] peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ (the Messiah, the Anointed One)." -Romans 5:1

#### Because of Jesus Christ: we can love God and others because of His incredible love

**"together with all the saints, to grasp how wide and long and high and deep is the love of Christ,"** <sup>19</sup> and to **know this love that surpasses knowledge.**"-Ephesians 3:18-19



Intentionally Remember – John 13:34-35

**“Love one another.  
As I have loved you,  
so you must love  
one another.**

**By this all men will know  
that you are my disciples,  
if you love one another.”**

**–Jesus, John 13:34-35**





"Love each other as I have loved you."-Jesus, John15:12

"This is how we know what love is: Jesus Christ laid down his life for us"-1 John 3:16

## Jesus said we are to love God and love Others (Mark 12:30-31), but why don't we love?

**The Goal - Love:** "The goal of this command is love, which comes from a pure heart and a good conscience and a sincere faith." -1 Tim.1:5

God's Perfect Love → Pure Heart & Clear Conscience & Sincere Faith/Trust → Perfect love → Drives out Fear  
(1 John 4:16-19) (Affections/Emotions) (Mind) (Will) (1 John 4:16-19) (1 John 4:16-19)

**The Rejection of this is a Shipwrecked Life:** "Some have rejected these and so have shipwrecked" -1 Tim. 1:19

Bitterness/Blame/Impurity &/or Guilty conscience/Lies Believed &/or Stubbornness/Rebellion/Pride → Shipwrecked

### (1) YAHWEH GOD IS PERFECT LOVE.

Each person of the Trinity is perfectly giving of their complete personhood to each other (John 14-17, 1 John, etc.).

### (2) Our sin separated us

from Yahweh God, therefore, the Son added a Human Nature, Jesus which means

"Yahweh saves."

Jesus lived the perfect life and died on the cross as a perfect sacrifice for our sin and the perfect demonstration of Yahweh God's love & justice (Rom. 6:26, etc.)

### (3) YAHWEH GOD calls each of us to:

(A) Repent (turn from your sin & pride)

&

(B) Trust in Jesus Christ as your Lord & Savior (Mark 1:15, Rom. 10:9-13, etc.)

### (4) Then we become

"born again" ✚

and have the Holy Spirit in us as a "deposit guaranteeing" our salvation. We are declared permanently positionally right with Yahweh God (John 3, Eph.1:13, Rom. 5:1, etc.).

(5) Jesus said that the Holy Spirit would be "living water" flowing out of us. It is by the power of the Holy Spirit that we can express "love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness and self-control" (John 7:38, Gal. 5:22, etc.)

### (6) YAHWEH GOD made us to love fully:

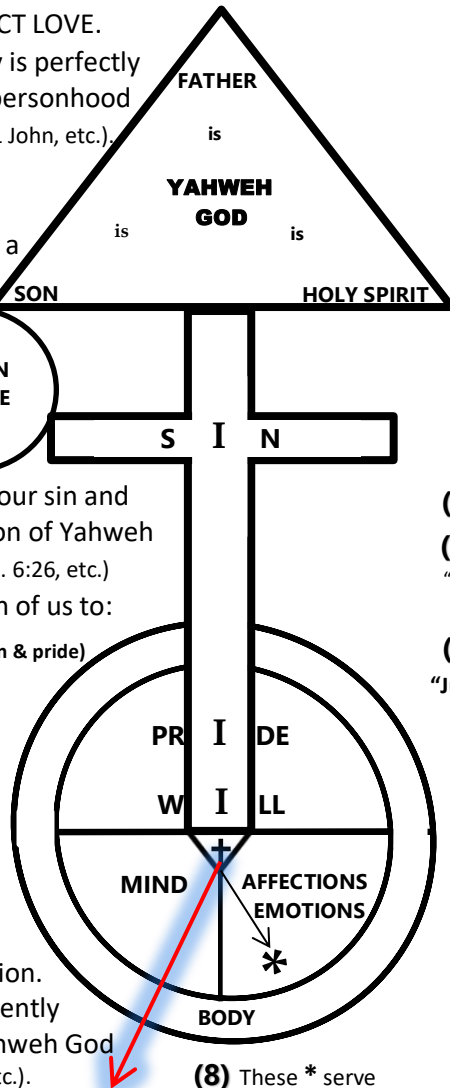
**SOUL** (Will, Mind, Affections/Emotions)

**Affections/Emotions:** that with which we desire and express passion

**Mind:** that with which we think, reason, etc.

**Will:** that with which we trust & act

**BODY** - that with which we hear, smell, see, taste, touch



(8) These \* serve as targets for the Enemy to shoot flaming darts/arrows at you and accuse you (Eph. 6:16).

(7) Even though you are permanently declared positionally right with God and are a new creation (2 Cor 5:17) you can still "grieve the Holy Spirit"/stop the ✚ "flow of living water" and therefore you are unable to love. You are then shipwrecked/imprisoned in your soul (1 Tim 1:5,19 & Matt. 18:31-35) & strongholds develop in your:

**1. Affections/Emotions: Bitterness/Blame/Impurity**

"Get rid of all bitterness, rage"- Eph. 4:31, Matt. 18:31-35

**2. Mind: Guilty Conscience/Lies Believed**

"He who conceals his sins does not prosper"-Prov. 28:13

**3. Will: Stubbornness/Rebellion/Pride**

"God opposes the proud"-James 4:6

**4. Body: Body used in ungodly/unholy way/s**

"Do not offer the parts of your body to sin"-Romans 6:13

### (11) Pray for Yahweh God's love & power for His glory:

"I pray that out of his glorious riches He may strengthen you with power through His Spirit in your inner being, so that Christ may dwell in your hearts through faith. And I pray that you, being rooted and established in love, may have power, together with all the saints, to grasp how wide and long and high and deep is the love of Christ, and to know this love that surpasses knowledge—that you may be filled to the measure of all the fullness of God. Now to Him who is able to do immeasurably more than all we ask or imagine, according to His power that is at work within us, to Him be glory in the church and in Christ Jesus throughout all generations, for ever and ever! Amen."

### (10) Thank Yahweh God for:

**Mercy** ("undeserved forgiveness"), **Grace** ("unmerited favor, God giving the desire & power to respond like Jesus no matter what happens"), & **Joy** ("giving God the glory in all situations") (1 Thes. 5:16, etc.)

### (9) The Solution: "Submit yourself to God"-James 4:7

#### (a) Ask God to reveal any past & present bitterness, etc.

"Search me, O God, and know my heart, try me, and know my thoughts, and see if a grievous way be in me, and lead me in the everlasting way!"-Ps.139:23-24

#### (b) Repent/Turn from the idol of "I" and Trust in Jesus

"Just as you received Christ Jesus as Lord, continue to walk in Him"-Col 2:6

Put Off All (Eph. 4-5)	Put On (Col. 3, Gal. 5, Rom. 6, 13)
Bitterness/Blame/Impurity	Forgive as Christ forgave you, Purity
Guilty conscience/Lies	Speaking Truth
Believed/False Ideas Believed	& Believing the Truth
Stubbornness/Rebellion/Pride	Submission to God, True Trust
Body used in ungodly way	Body given to God

Note: Any bitterness, etc. towards someone or some event (both past and present) is ultimately bitterness, etc. towards God (see 1 John 4:20 & Gen. 50:19-21).

**Example:** "Lord I repent of my bitterness towards you Lord that you allowed \_\_\_\_\_ and my bitterness towards \_\_\_\_\_. It is sin of me to desire this way towards you Lord and towards this person. Lord forgive me. Lord I turn from this and I trust in you. I will forgive as you forgave me."

#### (c) Then Obey the Scriptures and get right with others.

**Example:** "I sinned against God when I \_\_\_\_\_ (state specific sin/s) will you please forgive me?" (Matt. 5-7, Rom. 12:17-19, Acts. 24:16, etc.)

"Do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, with whom you were sealed for the day of redemption. Get rid of all bitterness, rage and anger, brawling and slander, along with every form of malice. Be kind and compassionate to one another, forgiving each other, just as in Christ God forgave you." -Eph. 4:29-32





## Section 3 (b.1) – Love others as Jesus did

### Turning From Pride – So That We Can Love Others As Jesus Did

If you are born again you have a real person living in you—the Holy Spirit and even though you are permanently declared positionally right with God [past, present, and future], are a new creation, and are dead to sin, you can still “grieve the Holy Spirit”/stop the “flow of living water” and therefore you are unable to love. You are then shipwrecked/imprisoned in your soul (Eph. 4:29-32, 1 Tim 1:5,19 & Matt. 18:21-35, etc.) & strongholds develop (Acts 8:22-23, etc.).

**The Solution: “Submit yourself to God”**—James 4:7

Ask God to reveal any past and present hurts, bitterness, guilt, stubbornness, pride, etc.

There are *many ways* that God can reveal the hurts, bitterness, guilt, stubbornness, pride, etc. of our past or present. One way is to find a field, a long hallway, or some stair steps and for each step ask God to reveal any bitterness, guilt, stubbornness, etc. that you have towards Him or towards others for each year of your life. **NOTE:** 1) Our past does NOT cause us to act in the present. Our past can influence us but NOT cause us to act. We sin because we choose to sin. 2) We are new creations in Christ (2 Cor. 5:17); therefore, sin is NOT our Master, the Lord is our Master. 3) It is God who reveals our sin and convicts us of sin NOT ourselves.

Pray: “Search me, O God, and know my heart, try me, and know my thoughts,  
and see if a grievous way be in me, and lead me in the everlasting way!”—Psalm 139:23-24

**An Example (each step represents a year of life):**

“Lord I am willing to turn from my sins and my lies, and be healed of my hurts”

Note: If God does not bring anything to mind move on to the next step.

“Lord I am willing to turn from my sins and my lies, and be healed of my hurts”

Note: If God does not bring anything to mind move on to the next step.

									10, etc.
								9	
							7		
						6	God at age 6 show me . . .		
				5	God show me any wounds, hurts, bitterness, sins, etc. from age 5 towards you or others.				
			4	God show me any wounds, hurts, bitterness, etc. from age 4 towards you or others.					
		3	God reveal any bitterness, etc. towards you about the place I was born, etc.						
	2	God reveal any bitterness, etc. towards you about the family you gave me, etc.							
1	God reveal any bitterness, guilt, stubbornness, etc. towards you about how I was made, looked, etc.								
0	God reveal any bitterness, guilt, stubbornness, etc. towards you that I was conceived and put on the earth.								



Note: Any bitterness, etc. towards someone or some event (both past and present) is ultimately bitterness, etc. towards God (see 1 John 4:20 and Gen. 50:19-21).

“And we know that in all things God works for the good of those who love him, who have been called according to his purpose.”—Romans 8:28

“Rejoice always, pray continually, give thanks in all circumstances; for this is God’s will for you in Christ Jesus.”—1 Thessalonians 5:16-18

**Example prayer towards God:** “Thank You, Lord, for showing this to me! Lord, I REPENT of my bitterness towards You, Lord, that You allowed \_\_\_\_\_ to happen in my life. It is sin for me to feel this way towards You, Lord. Lord, forgive me for my bitterness, guilt, and stubbornness towards You for allowing this. I turn from this and I turn to You, Jesus. *Thank You, God, that You allowed this event to happen in my life! I thank You that You work out all things for my good (Romans 8:28)!* Lord, is there anything else that You want me to know about this event in my life?”

**Example prayer to God about people:** “Thank You, Lord, for showing this to me! Lord, I REPENT of my bitterness towards You, Lord, that You allowed \_\_\_\_\_ (person’s name) to do \_\_\_\_\_ to me. Lord, I repent of my bitterness, etc. towards \_\_\_\_\_ (person’s name). It is sin for me to feel this way towards You, Lord, and towards this person. Lord, forgive me. I turn from this and I turn to You, Jesus. I will forgive \_\_\_\_\_ as You forgave me (Eph.4:32).”

**Example prayer to God about your sins:** “Thank You, Lord, for showing this to me! Lord, I REPENT of my stubbornness towards You, Lord, when I sinned against You by \_\_\_\_\_. Lord, I repent of my sin towards You and towards \_\_\_\_\_. It was sin for me to act in this way towards You, Lord, and towards this person. Lord, forgive me. I turn from this and I turn to You, Jesus. I am willing to get right with this person as You, Lord, direct me in Your word.” (see Matt. 5-7, Rom. 12:17-21, Acts. 24:16, etc.)

**Then OBEY the Scriptures and get right with others, as God directs you through His Word to have a clear conscience with others, etc.**

**Example:** “I sinned against God and wronged you when I \_\_\_\_\_ (state specific sin/s). It was very wrong and disrespectful of me when I wronged you in this way. Will you please forgive me?”

Note: When we sin against God and wrong people it is an act of our will and not a mistake. Typically, we say “sorry” when we make a mistake. Therefore, it is important when seeking forgiveness of others that we identify what we did and then accept responsibility by stating that you sinned against them. Also, individuals will often dismiss it as “no big deal” or “that was a long time ago” but it is important to make it clear that you did wrong them and that you did sin against God. In addition, avoid the word “if” (e.g.: “if I wronged you”), this is similar to “sorry”.



## Section 3 (b) – Love others as Jesus did

### How to Resolve Conflict Biblically

#### Put a muzzle on your mouth.

"A fool gives full vent to his anger, but a wise man keeps himself under control."-Proverbs 29:11

"A fool shows his annoyance at once, but a prudent man overlooks an insult."-Proverbs 12:16

"I said, 'I will watch my ways and **keep my tongue from sin; I will put a muzzle on my mouth**'"-Psalm 39:1

#### Get right with God and humble yourself.

"**All of you, clothe yourselves with humility** toward one another, because, '**God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.**'"-1 Peter 5:5

"But **he gives us more grace.** That is why Scripture says: "**God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.**" <sup>7</sup> **Submit yourselves, then, to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.** <sup>8</sup> **Come near to God and he will come near to you.** Wash your hands, you sinners, and purify your hearts, you double-minded. <sup>9</sup> Grieve, mourn and wail. Change your laughter to mourning and your joy to gloom. <sup>10</sup> **Humble yourselves before the Lord, and he will lift you up.**"-James 4:6-10

#### Forgive as Christ forgave you and keep forgiving as Christ forgave you until you see them with pity and compassion.

"**So, as those who have been chosen of God, holy and beloved, put on heart of compassion, kindness, humility, gentleness and patience;** <sup>13</sup> **bearing with one another, and forgiving each other,** whoever has a complaint against anyone; **just as the Lord forgave you, so also should you.** <sup>14</sup> Beyond all these things put on love, which is the perfect bond of unity. <sup>15</sup> **Let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts,** to which indeed you were called in one body; and **be thankful.**"-Colossians 3:12-15

"**forgiving each other, just as in Christ God forgave you.**"-Ephesians 4:32

#### Do not let the sun go down on your anger.

"Therefore, laying aside falsehood, **SPEAK TRUTH EACH ONE OF YOU WITH HIS NEIGHBOR,** for we are members of one another. **BE ANGRY, AND yet DO NOT SIN; do not let the sun go down on your anger, 27 and do not give the devil an opportunity.**"-Ephesians 4:25-27

#### Let no bitter root grow up.

"**Make every effort to live in peace with all men and to be holy;** without holiness no one will see the Lord. **15 See to it that no one misses the grace of God and that no bitter root grows up to cause trouble and defile many.**"-Hebrews 12:14-15

#### Do not grieve the Holy Spirit and get rid of all bitterness, rage, anger, brawling and slander, etc.

"**Do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God,** with whom you were sealed for the day of redemption. **Get rid of all bitterness, rage and anger, brawling and slander, along with every form of malice. Be kind and compassionate to one another, forgiving each other, just as in Christ God forgave you.**"-Ephesians 4:29-32

#### Wisdom of the world is NEVER wisdom from God and therefore only wisdom from God should be followed

"Now if any of you lacks **wisdom,** he should ask God, who gives generously"-James 1:5

"**Who is wise and understanding among you? Let him show it by his good life, by deeds done in the humility that comes from wisdom.** <sup>14</sup> But if you harbor **bitter envy** and **selfish ambition** in your hearts, do not boast about it or deny the truth. <sup>15</sup> Such "wisdom" does not come down from heaven but is earthly, unspiritual, of the devil. <sup>16</sup> For where you have envy and selfish ambition, there you find disorder and every evil practice. <sup>17</sup> But **the wisdom that comes from heaven is first of all pure; then peace-loving, considerate, submissive, full of mercy and good fruit, impartial and sincere.** <sup>18</sup> **Peacemakers who sow in peace raise a harvest of righteousness.**"-James 3:13-18

**Take the log out of your own eye first.** Lead by example by seeing how fast you can humble yourself and seek forgiveness by stating how you specifically sinned against the other person. Example: "I have sinned against God and you and I wronged you when \_\_\_\_ (state specific sin). Will you please forgive me?"

"Why do you look at **the speck** of sawdust in your brother's eye and pay no attention to **the plank** in your own eye? <sup>4</sup> How can you say to your brother, 'Let me take the speck out of your eye,' when all the time there is a plank in your own eye? <sup>5</sup> **You hypocrite, first take the plank out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly** to remove the speck from your brother's eye."-Matthew 7:3-5

#### Gently, kindly, and courageously call out sin as sin. Example: "It is sinful to speak in that way. It dishonors God and me."

"**Brothers, if someone is caught in a sin, you who are spiritual should restore him gently.** But watch yourself, or you also may be tempted. <sup>2</sup> Carry each other's burdens, and in this way you will fulfill the law of Christ. <sup>3</sup> If anyone thinks he is something when he is nothing, he deceives himself. . . . <sup>7</sup> **Do not be deceived: God cannot be mocked. A man reaps what he sows.** <sup>8</sup> **The one who sows to please his sinful nature, from that nature will reap destruction; the one who sows to please the Spirit, from the Spirit will reap eternal life.** <sup>9</sup> **Let us not become weary in doing good,** for at the proper time we will reap a harvest if we do not give up. <sup>10</sup> Therefore, as we have opportunity, **let us do good** to all people, especially to those who belong to the family of believers."-Galatians 6:1-10

"Better is open rebuke than hidden love. <sup>6</sup> Wounds from a friend can be trusted."-Proverbs 27:5-6a

#### Labor in prayer for each other.

"**He is always wrestling in prayer for you,** that you may **stand firm in all the will of God, mature and fully assured.**"-Colossians 4:12

#### See other true believers as Christ sees them—pure and blameless—glorified in His presence.

"**love keeps no records of wrongs, it always protects, it always trusts, it always hopes, it always perseveres.**"-1 Corinthians 13:7

"And we know that in all things **God works for the good of those who love him,** who have been called according to his purpose. **29** For those God foreknew he also predestined to be conformed to the likeness of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brothers. **30** And those he predestined, he also called; those he called, he also justified; those he justified, **he also glorified.**"-Romans 8:28-30

To God be the Glory! This handout is free and is intended for encouragement and educational purposes.

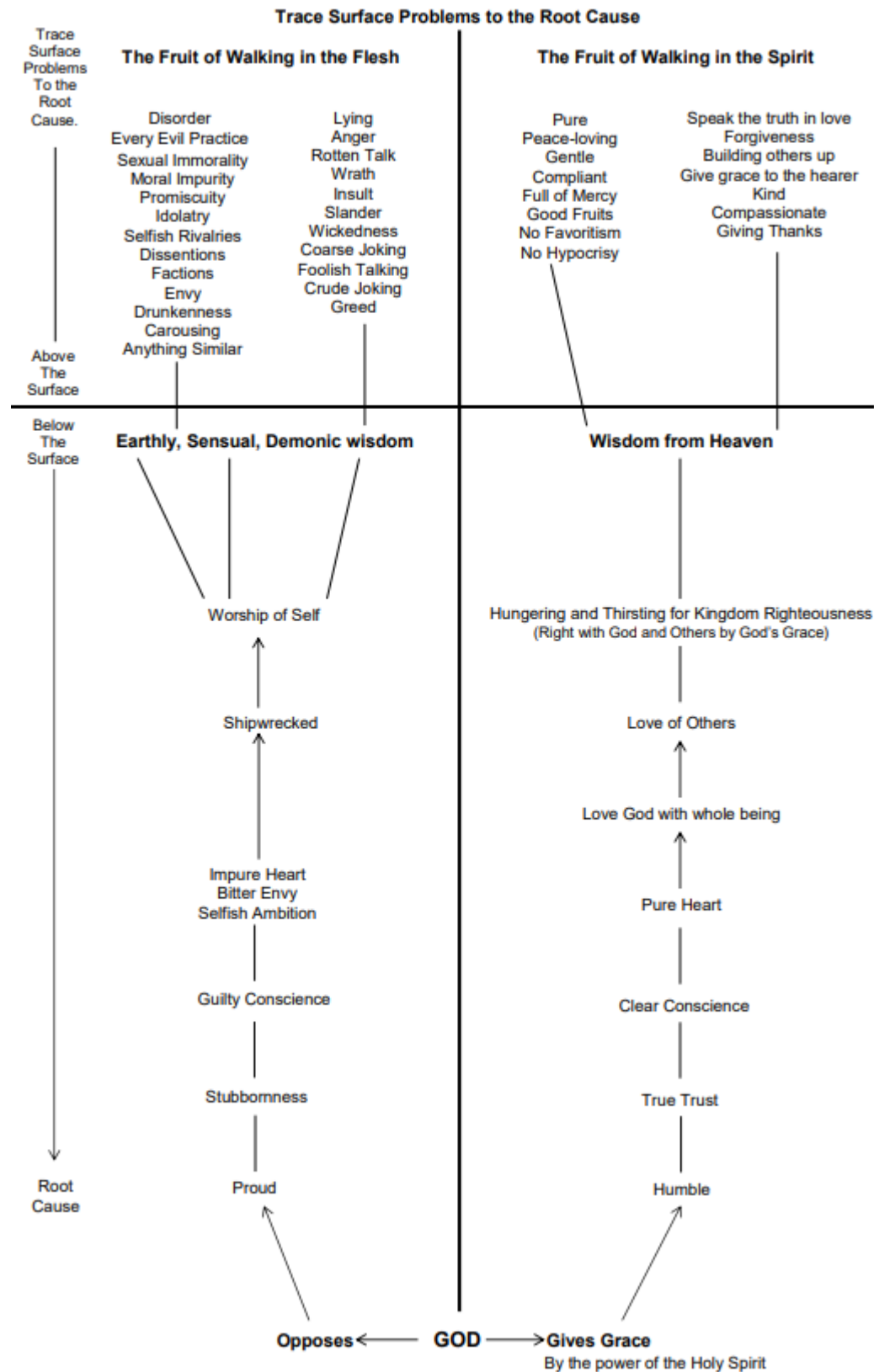
For more information and for free handouts like this please go to: 1T3Life.org



## Section 3 (b) – Love others as Jesus did

**“No good tree bears bad fruit, nor does a bad tree bear good fruit.  
Each tree is recognized by its own fruit.”—Jesus, Luke 6:43-4**

Based on: James 3:13-4:10, 1 Timothy 1:5 & 19, Galatians 5:16-26, Matthew 5-7, Matthew 22:36-38, Ephesians 4-5





## Section 3 (b) – Love others as Jesus did

### **God's ways are always best and not following them as God said to is sin!**

#### **Judging Others**

**"Do not judge, or you too will be judged. <sup>2</sup>For in the same way you judge others, you will be judged, and with the measure you use, it will be measured to you. <sup>3</sup>Why do you look at the speck of sawdust in your brother's eye and pay no attention to the plank in your own eye? <sup>4</sup>How can you say to your brother, 'Let me take the speck out of your eye,' when all the time there is a plank in your own eye? <sup>5</sup>You hypocrite, first take the plank out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to remove the speck from your brother's eye. <sup>6</sup>Do not give dogs what is sacred; do not throw your pearls to pigs. If you do, they may trample them under their feet, and then turn and tear you to pieces."** -Matthew 7:1-6

**Ponder:** Lord, how am I being hypocritical Lord? What plank do I (by your grace) need to have removed so that I can see you clearly and see this individual (who is an image bearer of You, Lord) the way that you want me to see them?

#### **No Complaining or Arguing**

**"Do everything without complaining or arguing, <sup>15</sup>so that you may become blameless and pure, children of God without fault in a crooked and depraved generation, in which you shine like stars in the universe <sup>16</sup>as you hold out the word of life--in order that I may boast on the day of Christ that I did not run or labor for nothing."** -Philippians 2:14-16

**Ponder:** Lord, is there any hint of complaining or arguing in my mind, will, or affections? If there is, I have not forgiven as Christ forgave me and I, therefore, need to repent and forgive as Christ forgave me.

#### **Always Full of Grace**

**"Let your conversation be always full of grace, seasoned with salt, so that you may know how to answer everyone."** - Colossians 4:6 (literally in grace)

**Ponder:** Lord, when I think about this person how can my thoughts be full of grace? Lord, how can my thoughts be seasoned with salt ("pure and penetrating")? What words can I say, Lord, that as they come off of my tongue they will be saturated in grace? What words can I say, Lord, that will be seasoned with salt?

#### **Do I need to be reconciled?**

**"If your brother has something against you . . . leave your gift there in front of the altar. First go and be reconciled to your brother; then come and offer your gift."** -Matthew 5:23-24

**Ponder:** Lord, how do you want me to seek forgiveness from this person whom I have sinned against?

#### **Avoiding Errors/Sin**

**"It is not good for a person to be without knowledge, and he who hurries his footsteps errors."** -Proverbs 19:2

**Ponder:** How can I not hurry my footsteps (e.g. stop and pray through it, maybe write out, or at least think out, what to say and check it against God's word)? Lord, how do you want me to go about this?

#### **Go to them alone first:**

**"If your brother sins against you, go and show him his fault, just between the two of you. If he listens to you, you have won your brother over."** -Matthew 18:15

#### **After you went alone (and continue to go alone and there is no resolution), then you can go with another:**

**"But if he will not listen, take one or two others along, so that 'every matter may be established by the testimony of two or three witnesses.'" -Matthew 18:16**

#### **After you have gone alone and with another (and continue to go and there is no resolution), then you can bring it before a group:**

**"If he refuses to listen to them, tell it to the church; and if he refuses to listen even to the church, treat him as you would a pagan or a tax collector."** -Matthew 18:17

#### **Overcome Evil with Good**

**"Love must be sincere. Hate what is evil; cling to what is good. <sup>10</sup>Be devoted to one another in brotherly love. Honor one another above yourselves. <sup>11</sup>Never be lacking in zeal, but keep your spiritual fervor, serving the Lord. <sup>12</sup>Be joyful in hope, patient in affliction, faithful in prayer. <sup>13</sup>Share with God's people who are in need. Practice hospitality. <sup>14</sup>Bless those who persecute you; bless and do not curse. <sup>15</sup>Rejoice with those who rejoice; mourn with those who mourn. <sup>16</sup>Live in harmony with one another. Do not be proud, but be willing to associate with people of low position. Do not be conceited. <sup>17</sup>Do not repay anyone evil for evil. Be careful to do what is right in the eyes of everybody. <sup>18</sup>If it is possible, as far as it depends on you, live at peace with everyone. <sup>19</sup>Do not take revenge, my friends, but leave room for God's wrath, for it is written: 'It is mine to avenge; I will repay,' says the Lord. <sup>20</sup>On the contrary: 'If your enemy is hungry, feed him; if he is thirsty, give him something to drink. In doing this, you will heap burning coals on his head.' <sup>21</sup>Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good."** -Romans 12:9-21



## Section 3 (b.1) – Love others as Jesus did – love your spouse



### Love Your Beautiful Beloved Bride

**-by rejoicing daily over your bride** - you must capture her heart everyday with God's love for her and your love for her – before marriage you were pursuing her and you need to pursue her even more every day in marriage, God rejoices over you every day so you should rejoice over her every day!

**"as a bridegroom rejoices over his bride, so will your God rejoice over you."**-Isaiah 62:5b

**-by passionately showering her with romance and affection each day** – true romance begins at marriage - from the wedding day on is when you should be showering her with Godly love, Godly romance, sacrifice, encouragement, blessing, prayers, etc. every day and throughout every day. You must capture her heart everyday with God's love for her and your love for her – win her over every day!

**"Let him kiss me with the kisses of his mouth— for your love is more delightful than wine."**-Song of Solomon 1:2

**"We will rejoice in you and be glad; we will extol your love more than wine."**-Song of Solomon 1:4b

**"I am my beloved's and my beloved is mine"**-Song of Solomon 6:3

**"I am my beloved's, and his desire is for me."**-Song of Solomon 7:10

**-by her being my standard of beauty – she is perfect beauty in my sight – all other women are ugly in comparison to her**

**"Like a lily among thorns is my darling among the young women."**-Song of Solomon 2:2

**"You are altogether beautiful, my darling, and there is no blemish in you."**-Song of Solomon 4:7

**"My dove, my perfect one!"**-Song of Solomon 5:2c

**"My dove, my perfect one, is unique"**-Song of Solomon 6:9a

**"Who is this that grows like the dawn, as beautiful as the full moon, as pure as the sun, as awesome as an army with banners?"**

**-Song of Solomon 6:10**

**-by telling her throughout the day in words and/or in writing that she is beautiful. By letting her know consistently everyday by word and action that you find her beautiful and that she is the most beautiful woman in the world to you and that God has designed her specifically for you and you for her.**

**"Most beautiful among women"**-Song of Solomon 1:8

**"How beautiful you are, my darling, how beautiful you are! Your eyes are like doves."**-Song of Solomon 1:15, 4:1

**"My beloved responded and said to me, 'Arise, my darling, my beautiful one, and come along'."**-Song of Solomon 2:10

**"O my dove, in the clefts of the rock, in the secret place of the steep pathway, let me see your form, let me hear your voice;**

**for your voice is sweet, and your form is lovely."**-Song of Solomon 2:14

**"How beautiful and how delightful you are"**-Song of Solomon 7:6a

**-by daily delighting in her**

**"May your fountain be blessed, and may you rejoice in the wife of your youth. <sup>19</sup> A loving doe, a graceful deer —may her breasts satisfy you always, may you ever be intoxicated with her love."**- Proverbs 5:18-19

**-by being passionate about her and passionately loving her**

**"You have made my heart beat faster, my sister, my bride; you have made my heart beat faster with a single glance of your eyes,**

**with a single strand of your necklace. <sup>10</sup> How beautiful is your love, my sister, my bride! How much better is your love than wine, and the fragrance of your oils than all kinds of spices! <sup>11</sup> Your lips, my bride, drip honey; honey and milk are under your tongue"**-Song of Solomon 4:9-11b



## Section 3 (b.1) – Love others as Jesus did – love your spouse



### Love My Beautiful Beloved Bride (continued)

#### -by daily showering her with love – she should feel like the most loved woman on the planet

“He has brought me to his banquet hall, and his banner over me is love.”-Song of Solomon 2:4

#### -by guarding quality time with her

“Draw me after you and let us run together! The king has brought me into his chambers.”-Song of Solomon 1:4

#### -by drawing her close and showering her with affectionate physical touch

“Let his left hand be under my head and his right hand embrace me.”-Song of Solomon 2:6

“Scarcely had I left them when I found him whom my soul loves; I held on to him and would not let him go.”-Song of Solomon 3:4

“His mouth is full of sweetness. And he is wholly desirable. This is my beloved and this is my friend.”-Song of Solomon 5:16

“How beautiful are your feet in sandals, O prince’s daughter! The curves of your hips are like jewels, the work of the hands of an artist.”-Song of Solomon 7:1

#### -by being unified and one with her physically

“It is good for a man not to touch a woman. <sup>2</sup> But because of immoralities, **each man is to have his own wife, and each woman is to have her own husband.** <sup>3</sup> **The husband must fulfill his duty to his wife, and likewise also the wife to her husband.** <sup>4</sup> **The wife does not have authority over her own body, but the husband does; and likewise also the husband does not have authority over his own body, but the wife does.** <sup>5</sup> **Stop depriving one another, except by agreement for a time, so that you may devote yourselves to prayer, and come together again so that Satan will not tempt you because of your lack of self-control.**”-1 Corinthians 7:1-5

#### -by showering her with words of encouragement and only speaking encouraging and kind words to her

“O my dove, in the clefts of the rock, in the secret place of the steep pathway, let me see your form, let me hear your voice; for your voice is sweet, and your form is lovely.”-Song of Solomon 2:14

“Do not let any unwholesome talk come out of your mouths, but **only what is helpful for building others up** according to their needs, that it may benefit those who listen.”-Ephesians 4:29

#### -by thoroughly showering her with gifts as God directs – God is a giver

“Thanks be to God for His indescribable gift!”-2 Corinthians 9:15

#### -by showering her with acts of service

“Jesus called them together and said, “You know that those who are regarded as rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them, and their high officials exercise authority over them. <sup>43</sup> Not so with you. Instead, whoever wants to become great among you must be your servant, <sup>44</sup>and whoever wants to be first must be slave of all. <sup>45</sup> For even **the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many.**”-Mark 10:42-45

#### -by giving of myself fully to her (soul and body) and loving her perfectly

“My command is this: **Love each other as I have loved you. Greater love has no one than this, that he lay down his life** for his friends.”-Jesus, John 15:12-13

“There is no fear in love. But **perfect love drives out fear.**”- 1 John 4:18a





## Section 3 (b.1) – Love others as Jesus did – love your spouse



### Love My Beautiful Beloved Bride (continued)

**-by consistently letting her know (in words and in actions) that you are completely committed to her**

“for the gifts and the calling of God are irrevocable.”-Romans 11:29

“AND THE TWO SHALL BECOME ONE FLESH; so they are no longer two, but one flesh. <sup>9</sup> What therefore God has joined together, let no man separate.”-Jesus, Mark 10:8-9

“And did not God make [you and your wife] one [flesh]? Did not One make you and preserve your spirit alive? And why [did God make you two] one? Because He sought a godly offspring [from your union]. **Therefore take heed to yourselves, and let no one deal treacherously *and* be faithless to the wife of his youth.**

<sup>16</sup> **For Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: I hate divorce *and* marital separation** and him who covers his garment [his wife] with violence. **Therefore keep a watch upon your spirit [that it may be controlled by My Spirit], that you deal not treacherously *and* faithlessly [with your marriage mate].**”-Malachi 2:15-16

**-by having a pure heart, a clear conscience, and a sincere faith [true trust] with both God and her.** Meaning I have no secrets that I am trying to hide from God or her (no guilty conscience). I have no bitterness, etc. toward God or her. I trust fully in God and in her.

“Husbands, love your wives and do not be bitter toward them.”-Colossians 3:19

“The goal of this command is **love**, which comes from a **pure heart** and a **good conscience** and a **sincere faith**.”-1 Timothy 1:5

“**Nothing in all creation is hidden from God’s sight. Everything is uncovered and laid bare** before the eyes of him to whom we must give account.”-Hebrews 4:13

“**The one who conceals his sins will not prosper**, but whoever **confesses and renounces [forsakes] them will find mercy**.”-Proverbs 28:13

**-by always being kind to her - there is never a time where it is ok to be unkind/rude! – by being patient/longsuffering and giving her my full attention**

“**Love suffers-long** [is patient/longsuffering], **love is kind**, it does not envy [it gives], it does not boast [it builds others up], is not proud [it is humble], is not rude [it is full of grace], is not self-seeking [it is self-sacrificing], love does not delight in evil but rejoices in the truth [God’s Word and God’s Ways], **love keeps no records of wrongs**, it always protects, it **always** trusts, it **always** hopes, it **always** perseveres.”-1 Corinthians 13:4-7. IF YOU DO ANYTHING THAT IS NOT IN ACCORDANCE WITH THESE ATTRIBUTES OF LOVE, IT IS A SIN!

“So when you, a mere man, pass judgment on them and yet do the same things, do you think you will escape God’s judgment? <sup>4</sup> Or do you show contempt for the riches of his kindness, tolerance and patience, not realizing that **God’s kindness leads you toward repentance?**”-Romans 2:3-4

**-by loving her like Jesus loves her and kindly washing her with God’s Word**

“Husbands, **love your wives, just as Christ also loved the church and gave Himself up for her**, <sup>26</sup> so that He might sanctify her, having **cleansed her by the washing of water with the word**, <sup>27</sup> that He might present to Himself the church in all her glory, having no spot or wrinkle or any such thing; but that she would be holy and blameless. <sup>28</sup> So **husbands ought also to love their own wives** as their own bodies. He who loves his own wife loves himself; <sup>29</sup> for no one ever hated his own flesh, but **nourishes and cherishes it, just as Christ also does the church**, <sup>30</sup> because we are members of His body.”-Ephesians 5:26-30



## Section 3 (b.1) – Love others as Jesus did – love your spouse



### Love My Beautiful Beloved Bride (continued)

**-by leaving and cleaving in every way –NO EXCUSES -** (leave family and friends - emotionally, physically, financially, etc.) - the two become one - what is your is hers and what is hers is yours so there really is no hers or his there is only ours and all we have belongs to the Lord. Therefore, it is all the Lord's. There is no her bank account and my bank account, etc. You must become one financially otherwise you are not one. You have to be one in every way. You must leave your father and mother and become one with your spouse. You must leave friends, etc. and become one with your spouse. Let no one separate you.

"But from the beginning of creation, God MADE THEM MALE AND FEMALE. <sup>7</sup> FOR THIS REASON A MAN SHALL LEAVE HIS FATHER AND MOTHER, <sup>8</sup> AND THE TWO SHALL BECOME ONE FLESH; so they are no longer two, but one flesh. <sup>9</sup> What therefore God has joined together, let no man separate."

-Jesus, Mark 10:6-9

"FOR THIS REASON A MAN SHALL LEAVE HIS FATHER AND MOTHER AND SHALL BE JOINED TO HIS WIFE, AND THE TWO SHALL BECOME ONE FLESH. <sup>32</sup> This mystery is great; but I am speaking with reference to Christ and the church. <sup>33</sup> Nevertheless, each individual among you also is to love his own wife even as himself, and the wife must see to it that she respects her husband."-Ephesians 5:31-33

**-by protecting the first year of marriage as the Lord directs and all other years in the future**

"When a man has taken a new wife, he shall not go out to war or be charged with any business; he shall be free at home one year, and bring happiness to his wife whom he has taken."-Deuteronomy 24:5

**-by bravely, courageously, kindly, and tenderly loving her heart**

"The purposes of a man's heart are deep waters, but a man of understanding draws them out."-Proverbs 20:5

**-by treating her tenderly, giving her my full attention, and listening to her.** My wife is a priceless person that I am to love completely. NOT a project to fix and NOT a proposition to correct. (Also, love her by understanding how God designed her by understanding her cycle (her wet/white days, dry/brown days, period/red days)<sup>16</sup>

"You husbands in the same way [as Christ did], live with your wives in an understanding way, as with a weaker vessel, the female and assigning honor as indeed co-heirs of the grace of life so that your prayers may not be hindered."-1 Peter 3:7

"My dear brothers, take note of this: Everyone should be quick to listen, slow to speak and slow to become angry, <sup>20</sup> for man's anger does not bring about the righteous life that God desires."-James 1:19-20

**-by praying for her that she would be rooted in the love of God, be watered by the Holy Spirit, live in the light, nourished by Jesus, and connected to Jesus**

See the earlier section in this plan entitled "Daily Releasing the Power & Love of the Holy Spirit by Praying God's Will" for these scriptures.

<sup>16</sup> See *Love & Fertility* by Mercedes Arzu, published by Family of the Americas, ISBN 0-9633125-4-5 (go to [www.familyplanning.net](http://www.familyplanning.net))

To God be the Glory! This handout is free and is intended for encouragement and educational purposes.  
For more information and for free handouts like this please go to: [1T3Life.org](http://1T3Life.org)



## Section 3 (b.1) – Love others as Jesus did – love your spouse



### Love My Beautiful Beloved Bride (continued)

#### -by interceding for her and modeling someone who fasts and prays and is dependent upon God

“He always lives to intercede”-Hebrews 7:25

“Now when Daniel learned that the decree had been published, he went home to his upstairs room where the windows opened toward Jerusalem. Three times a day he got down on his knees and prayed, giving thanks to his God, just as he had done before.”<sup>11</sup> Then these men went as a group and found Daniel praying and asking God for help.”-Daniel 6:10-11

“So I turned to the Lord God and pleaded with him in prayer and petition, in fasting”-Daniel 9:3

#### -by being a godly man and kindly directing her to what it means to be a godly woman in God’s Word and letting her flourish as a godly woman

“Be on your guard; stand firm in the faith; be men of courage [literally act like men]; be strong. Do everything in love.”- 1 Cor. 16:13-14

“In the same way [as Christ submitted to authorities] be submissive to your husbands so that . . . they may be won without a word by the conduct of their wives, as they observe your chaste [pure] and respectful [reverent] conduct. Of whom let it be not [merely] the outward adornment such as braided hair and the wearing of gold ornaments but the hidden man of the heart in the incorruptible adorning of a gentle [meek] and quiet spirit which is before God of great value. For in this way the holy woman – hoping in God adorned themselves submitting themselves to their own husbands.”-1 Peter 3:1-5

“But like the Holy One who called you, be Holy yourselves in all conduct become ye, because it has been written: Holy ye shall be, because I am Holy”-1 Peter 1:15-16

#### -by being radical about my own sin, calling sin as sin, and not tolerating wickedness in myself or in my household

“Let love be without hypocrisy. Abhor what is evil; cling to what is good.”- Romans 12:9

“You have heard that it was said, ‘You shall not commit adultery.’<sup>28</sup> But I tell you that anyone who looks at a woman lustfully has already committed adultery with her in his heart.<sup>29</sup> **If your right eye causes you to stumble, gouge it out and throw it away. It is better for you to lose one part of your body than for your whole body to be thrown into hell.**<sup>30</sup> And if your right hand causes you to stumble, cut it off and throw it away. It is better for you to lose one part of your body than for your whole body to go into hell.”-Jesus, Matthew 5:27-30

“I will set nothing wicked before my eyes; I hate the work of those who fall away; it shall not cling to me.

<sup>4</sup> **A perverse heart shall depart from me; I will not know wickedness.**

<sup>5</sup> **Whoever secretly slanders his neighbor, him I will destroy; the one who has a haughty look and a proud heart, him I will not endure.**

<sup>6</sup> **My eyes shall be on the faithful of the land, that they may dwell with me; he who walks in a perfect way, he shall serve me.**

<sup>7</sup> **He who works deceit shall not dwell within my house; he who tells lies shall not continue in my presence.**

<sup>8</sup> **Early I will destroy all the wicked of the land, that I may cut off all the evildoers from the city of Yahweh.”**- Psalm 101:3-8

“You saw among them their **detestable images** and idols of wood and stone, of silver and gold.<sup>18</sup> **Make sure there is no man or woman, clan or tribe among you today whose heart turns away from Yahweh our God to go and worship the gods of those nations; make sure there is no root among you that produces such bitter poison.**”-Deuteronomy 29:17-19

“But as for me and my house, we will serve Yahweh.”-Joshua 24:15c



## Section 3 (b.1) – Love others as Jesus did – love your spouse

### Love My Beautiful Beloved Bride (continued)

#### -by resolving conflict biblically

##### -put a muzzle on your mouth

"A fool gives full vent to his anger, but a wise man keeps himself under control." -Proverbs 29:11

"A fool shows his annoyance at once, but a prudent man overlooks an insult." -Proverbs 12:16

"I said, 'I will watch my ways and **keep my tongue from sin; I will put a muzzle on my mouth**'"

-Psalm 39:1

##### -get right with God and humble yourself

"All of you, clothe yourselves with humility toward one another, because, 'God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.'" -1 Peter 5:5

"But he gives us more grace. That is why Scripture says: '**God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.**'" <sup>7</sup> Submit yourselves, then, to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you. <sup>8</sup> Come near to God and he will come near to you. Wash your hands, you sinners, and purify your hearts, you double-minded. <sup>9</sup> Grieve, mourn and wail. Change your laughter to mourning and your joy to gloom. <sup>10</sup> **Humble yourselves before the Lord, and he will lift you up.**" -James 4:6-10

##### -forgive as Christ forgave you and keep forgiving as Christ forgave you until you see them with pity and compassion

"So, as those who have been chosen of God, holy and beloved, put on heart of compassion, kindness, humility, gentleness and patience; <sup>13</sup> bearing with one another, and forgiving each other, whoever has a complaint against anyone; **just as the Lord forgave you, so also should you.**" <sup>14</sup> Beyond all these things put on love, which is the perfect bond of unity. <sup>15</sup> **Let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts,** to which indeed you were called in one body; and **be thankful.**" - Colossians 3:1-10,12-15

"**forgiving each other, just as in Christ God forgave you.**" -Ephesians 4:32

##### -do not let the sun go down on your anger

"Therefore, laying aside falsehood, **SPEAK TRUTH EACH ONE OF YOU WITH HIS NEIGHBOR,** for we are members of one another. <sup>26</sup> **BE ANGRY, AND yet DO NOT SIN; do not let the sun go down on your anger,** <sup>27</sup> and do not give the devil an opportunity." -Ephesians 4:25-27

##### -let no bitter root grow up

"**Make every effort to live in peace** with all men and to be holy; without holiness no one will see the Lord. <sup>15</sup> **See to it that no one misses the grace of God and that no bitter root grows up to cause trouble and defile many.**" -Hebrews 12:14-15

##### -do not grieve the Holy Spirit and get rid of all bitterness, rage, anger, brawling and slander, etc.

"**Do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God,** with whom you were sealed for the day of redemption. **Get rid of all bitterness, rage and anger, brawling and slander, along with every form of malice. Be kind and compassionate to one another, forgiving each other, just as in Christ God forgave you.**" -Ephesians 4:29-32

##### -wisdom of the world is NEVER wisdom from God and therefore only wisdom from God should be followed

"Now if any of you lacks **wisdom,** he should ask God, who gives generously" -James 1:5

"**Who is wise and understanding among you? Let him show it by his good life, by deeds done in the humility that comes from wisdom.**" <sup>14</sup> But if you harbor **bitter envy** and **selfish ambition** in your hearts, do not boast about it or deny the truth. <sup>15</sup> Such "wisdom" does not come down from heaven but is earthly, unspiritual, of the devil. <sup>16</sup> For where you have envy and selfish ambition, there you find disorder and every evil practice. <sup>17</sup> But **the wisdom that comes from heaven is first of all pure; then peace-loving, considerate, submissive, full of mercy and good fruit, impartial and sincere.** <sup>18</sup> **Peacemakers who sow in peace raise a harvest of righteousness.**"

-James 3:13-18



## Section 3 (b.1) – Love others as Jesus did – love your spouse



### Love My Beautiful Beloved Bride (continued)

#### -by resolving conflict biblically (continued)

**-take the log out of your own eye first** – lead by example by being seeing how fast I can humble myself and seek forgiveness by stating how I specifically wronged the other person – “I have sinned against God and you and I wronged you when \_\_\_\_\_ (state specific sin). Will you please forgive me?” “Why do you look at the speck of sawdust in your brother’s eye and pay no attention to the plank in your own eye? <sup>4</sup> How can you say to your brother, ‘Let me take the speck out of your eye,’ when all the time there is a plank in your own eye? <sup>5</sup> **You hypocrite, first take the plank out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly** to remove the speck from your brother’s eye.” -Matthew 7:3-5

**-gently, kindly, and courageously call out sin as sin (example: “It is wrong to speak in that way. It dishonors God and me.”)**

“Brothers, if someone is caught in a sin, you who are spiritual should restore him gently. But watch yourself, or you also may be tempted. <sup>2</sup> Carry each other’s burdens, and in this way you will fulfill the law of Christ. <sup>3</sup> If anyone thinks he is something when he is nothing, he deceives himself . . . <sup>7</sup> **Do not be deceived: God cannot be mocked. A man reaps what he sows. <sup>8</sup> The one who sows to please his sinful nature, from that nature will reap destruction; the one who sows to please the Spirit, from the Spirit will reap eternal life. <sup>9</sup> Let us not become weary in doing good, for at the proper time we will reap a harvest if we do not give up. <sup>10</sup> Therefore, as we have opportunity, let us do good to all people, especially to those who belong to the family of believers.” -Galatians 6:1-10**

“Better is open rebuke than hidden love. <sup>6</sup> Wounds from a friend can be trusted.”  
-Proverbs 27:5-6a

**-labor in prayer for each other**

“He is always wrestling in prayer for you, that you may stand firm in all the will of God, mature and fully assured.” -Colossians 4:12

**-see your spouse as Christ sees them – pure and blameless – glorified in His presence**

“**love keeps no records of wrongs, it always protects, it always trusts, it always hopes, it always perseveres.**” -1 Corinthians 13:7

“And we know that in all things **God works for the good of those who love him**, who have been called according to his purpose. <sup>29</sup> For those God foreknew he also predestined to be conformed to the likeness of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brothers. <sup>30</sup> And those he predestined, he also called; those he called, he also justified; those he justified, **he also glorified.**” -Romans 8:28-30

**-by showering her with mercy and grace**

“The merciful man does himself good, but the cruel man does himself harm.” -Proverbs 11:17

“Blessed are the merciful, for they will be shown mercy.” -Jesus, Matthew 5:7

“Be merciful, just as your Father is merciful.” -Jesus, Luke 6:36

“**Let your conversation be always full of grace, seasoned with salt**, so that you may know how to answer everyone.” -Colossians 4:6



## Section 3 (b.1) – Love others as Jesus did – love your spouse



### Love My Beautiful Beloved Bride (continued)

#### -by protecting her and my household from foolish people, manipulative people, etc.

**“Stay away from a foolish man, for you will not find knowledge on his lips.”**-Proverbs 14:7

**“The woman Folly is loud; she is undisciplined and without knowledge.”**<sup>14</sup> She sits at the door of her house, on a seat at the highest point of the city, <sup>15</sup> calling out to those who pass by, who go straight on their way. <sup>16</sup> Let all who are simple come in here! **“she says to those who lack judgment.”**<sup>17</sup> **Stolen water is sweet; food eaten in secret is delicious!**<sup>18</sup> But little do they know that the dead are there, that her guests are in the depths of the grave.”-Proverbs 9:13-18

**“Now the works of the flesh are obvious: sexual immorality, moral impurity, promiscuity,”**<sup>20</sup> idolatry, sorcery [witchcraft/manipulation], hatreds, strife, jealousy, outbursts of anger, selfish ambitions, dissensions, factions,<sup>21</sup> envy, drunkenness, carousing, and anything similar. I tell you about these things in advance—as I told you before—that those who practice such things will not inherit the kingdom of God.”-Galatians 5:19-21

**“Do not make friends with a hot-tempered man, do not associate with one easily angered,”**<sup>25</sup> or you may learn his ways and get yourself ensnared.”-Proverbs 22:24

**“He who works deceit shall not dwell within my house; he who tells lies shall not continue in my presence.”**  
-Psalm 101:7

#### -by providing for her as God instructs me & working hard for God’s glory and her provision<sup>17</sup>

**“The hardworking farmer** should be the first to receive a share of the crops.”-2 Timothy 2:6

**“There is profit in all hard work,** but endless talk leads only to poverty.”-Proverbs 14:23

**“Do you see a man skilled in his work?** He will serve before kings; he will not serve before obscure men.”  
-Proverbs 22:29

**“He who works his land** will have abundant food, but he who chases fantasies lacks judgment.”-Proverbs 12:11

**“I passed by the field of the sluggard and by the vineyard of the man lacking sense,”**<sup>31</sup> and behold, it was completely overgrown with thistles; Its surface was covered with nettles, and its stone wall was broken down.<sup>32</sup> When I saw, I reflected upon it; I looked, and received instruction.<sup>33</sup> A little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to rest,<sup>34</sup> then your poverty will come as a robber and your want like an armed man.”  
-Proverbs 24:30-34

**“If anyone does not provide for his relatives, and especially for his immediate family, he has denied the faith and is worse than an unbeliever.”** -1 Timothy 5:8

**“Make it your ambition to lead a quiet life, to mind your own business and to work with your hands,** just as we told you,<sup>12</sup> so that **your daily life may win the respect of outsiders and so that you will not be dependent on anybody.”**-1 Thessalonians 4:1-12

**“If a man is lazy, the rafters sag; if his hands are idle, the house leaks.”**-Ecclesiastes 10:18

**“The lazy man does not roast his game, but the diligent man prizes his possessions.”**-Proverbs 12:27

**“He who tends a fig tree** will eat its fruit”-Proverbs 27:18a

**“A righteous man cares for the needs of his animal.”**-Proverbs 12:10a,

#### -by leading her and giving direction to her as Christ would

**“For the husband is the head of the wife, as Christ also is the head of the church, He Himself being the Savior of the body.”**-Ephesians 5:23

<sup>17</sup> See the section at the end of this atlas called: *A Look at Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances*

To God be the Glory! This handout is free and is intended for encouragement and educational purposes.  
For more information and for free handouts like this please go to: 1T3Life.org





## Section 3 (b.1) – Love others as Jesus did – love your spouse



### Love My Beautiful Beloved Bride (continued)

#### -by communicating to her my thoughts and plans for the future

“Those who plan what is good find love and faithfulness.”-Proverbs 14:22b

“The plans of the righteous are just.”-Proverbs 12:5a

“The noble man makes noble plans, and by noble deeds he stands.”-Isaiah 32:8

#### -by being like-minded with her & considering her better than myself

“If you have any encouragement from being united with Christ, if any comfort from his love, if any fellowship with the Spirit, if any tenderness and compassion, <sup>2</sup> then **make my joy complete by being like-minded, having the same love, being one in spirit and purpose.** <sup>3</sup> **Do nothing out of selfish ambition or vain conceit, but in humility consider others better than yourselves.**”-Philippians 2:1-3

“**Knowledge puffs up, but love builds up.** <sup>2</sup> The man who thinks he knows something does not yet know as he ought to know. <sup>3</sup> But the man who loves God is known by God.”- 1 Corinthians 8:1-3

#### -through keeping her secure (by pointing her to God, praying for her, following God’s directions for finances, etc.) [See the section at the end of this atlas entitled: *A Look at Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances*]

“But **seek first His kingdom and His righteousness**, and all these things will be added to you.”-Jesus, Matthew 6:33

#### -by living out God’s Word before her and setting the example for your home that points everyone to Jesus

“**I have set you an example that you should do as I have done for you.**”-Jesus, John 13:15

“Don’t let anyone look down on you because you are young, but **set an example for the believers in speech, in life, in love, in faith and in purity.**”-1 Timothy 4:12

#### -by leading her in both in Physical Health & Godliness

“**Beloved, I pray that in all respects you may prosper and be in good health**, just as your soul prospers.”

-3 John 1:2

“Have nothing to do with godless myths and old wives’ tales; rather, **train yourself to be godly.** <sup>8</sup> For **physical training is of some value, but godliness has value for all things, holding promise for both the present life and the life to come.**”-1 Timothy 4:7-9

#### -by being connected to the vine/Jesus. Marriage is always easy when you are yoked to Jesus.

“No branch can bear fruit by itself; it must remain in the vine. Neither can you bear fruit unless you remain in me. I am the vine; you are the branches. If a man remains in me and I in him, he will bear much fruit; apart from me you can do nothing.”-Jesus, John 15:4b-5

“**Come to me**, all who are weary and burdened, and **I will give you rest.** **Take my yoke upon you and learn from me**, for **I am gentle and humble in heart**, and you will find **rest for your souls.** For **my yoke is easy** and **my burden is light.**”-Jesus, Matthew 11:28-30

“Let us fix our eyes on Jesus, the author and perfecter of our faith”-Hebrews 12:2a

“So then, just as you received Christ Jesus as Lord, continue to live in him, rooted and built up in him, strengthened in the faith as you were taught, and overflowing with thankfulness.”-Colossians 2:6-7

“This, then, is how you should pray: “Our Father in heaven, hallowed be your name, your kingdom come, your will be done””-Jesus, Matthew 6:9

“Be joyful always; pray continually; give thanks in all circumstances, for this is God’s will for you in Christ Jesus.”-1 Thessalonians. 5:16-18

“Not my will, but yours be done.”-Luke 22:42



## Section 3 (b.2) – Love others as Jesus did – love your children



### Love My Children and My Children in the Faith

**-by loving them as Christ loves them and making them feel like the most loved children every day because God loves them and delights in them and I love them and delight in them**

“And a voice from heaven said, **“This is my Son, whom I love; with him I am well pleased.”**”-Matthew 3:17

**“chosen of God, holy and beloved”**-Colossians 3:12

“Yahweh your God is in the midst of you, a Mighty One, a Savior [Who saves]! **He will rejoice over you with joy; He will rest [in silent satisfaction] and in His love He will be silent and make no mention [of past sins, or even recall them]; He will exult over you with singing.**”

-Zephaniah 3:17

“may have power, together with all the saints, **to grasp how wide and long and high and deep is the love of Christ,** <sup>19</sup> **and to know this love that surpasses knowledge —that you may be filled to the measure of all the fullness of God.**”-Ephesians 3:18-19

**-by instructing, training, coaching, and disciplining them (while by being Yoked to Jesus and not yoked to myself, the world, etc.) and leading them from God’s Word**

“For I was very glad when brethren came and testified to your truth, that is, how you are walking in truth. <sup>4</sup> **I have no greater joy than this, to hear of my children walking in the truth.**”-3 John 1:3-4

“Children, obey your parents in everything, for this pleases the Lord. <sup>21</sup> **Fathers, do not exasperate your children, so they won’t become discouraged [lose heart].**”-Colossians 3:20-21

“Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right. <sup>2</sup> “Honor your father and mother”—which is the first commandment with a promise— <sup>3</sup> “that it may go well with you and that you may enjoy long life on the earth.” <sup>4</sup> **Fathers, do not exasperate [provoke] your children; instead, bring them up in the training [discipline] and instruction of the Lord.**”-Ephesians 6:1-4

“Yahweh our God, Yahweh is One. <sup>5</sup> Love Yahweh your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength. <sup>6</sup> These commandments that I give you today are to be upon your hearts. <sup>7</sup> **Impress them on your children. Talk about them when you sit at home and when you walk along the road, when you lie down and when you get up.** <sup>8</sup> Tie them as symbols on your hands and bind them on your foreheads. <sup>9</sup> Write them on the doorframes of your houses and on your gates.”-Deuteronomy 6:4-9

**-by appropriately correcting them as God directs**

“Folly is bound up in the heart of a child, but the rod of discipline will drive it far from him.”-Proverbs 22:15

“He who spares the rod hates his son, but he who loves him is careful to discipline him [Lit seeks him diligently with discipline].”-Proverbs 13:24

“Wisdom is found on the lips of the discerning, but a rod is for the back of the one who lacks sense.”-Proverbs 10:13

“Discipline your son while there is hope, and do not desire his death.”-Proverbs 19:18

“Do not withhold discipline from a child; if you punish him with the rod, he will not die. <sup>14</sup> Punish him with the rod and save his soul from death.”-Proverbs 23:13

**-praying God’s Word for them and with them**

See the earlier section in this plan entitled “Daily Releasing the Power & Love of the Holy Spirit by Praying God’s Will” for these scriptures.



## Section 3 (b.2) – Love others as Jesus did – love your children



### Love My Children and My Children in the Faith (continued)

#### -by aiming my children with Yahweh and towards Yahweh

**“Unless Yahweh builds the house,** they labor in vain who build it; unless the LORD guards the city, the watchman keeps awake in vain. <sup>2</sup>It is vain for you to rise up early, to retire late, to eat the bread of painful labors; for He gives to His beloved even in his sleep.

<sup>3</sup> Behold, **children are a gift of Yahweh,** the fruit of the womb is a reward.

<sup>4</sup> **Like arrows in the hand of a warrior, so are the children of one’s youth.**

<sup>5</sup> **How blessed is the man whose quiver is full of them;** they will not be ashamed when they speak with their enemies in the gate.”-Psalm 127:1-5

“Where there is no vision [no redemptive revelation of God], the people perish [run wild, are unrestrained]; but he who keeps the law [of God]—blessed (happy, fortunate, and enviable) is he.”-Proverbs 29:18

#### -by shepherding their hearts with Yahweh and being available and willing to listen to their hearts

“Keep and guard **your heart** with all vigilance and above all that you guard, for out of it flow the springs of life.”-Proverbs 4:23

“So when you, a mere man, pass judgment on them and yet do the same things, do you think you will escape God’s judgment? <sup>4</sup>Or do you show contempt for the riches of his kindness, tolerance and patience, not realizing that **God’s kindness leads you toward repentance?**”-Romans 2:3-4

“The purposes of a **man’s heart are deep waters, but a man of understanding draws them out.**”-Proverbs 20:5

“A joyful heart makes a cheerful face, but when the heart is sad, the spirit is broken.”-Proverbs 15:13

“Everyone should be quick to listen, slow to speak”-James 1:19b

#### -by pointing them to God as the source of all wisdom and to the joy that comes in obeying His Words

**“Be wise, my son, and bring my heart joy,** so that I can answer anyone who taunts me.”-Proverbs 27:11

“The father of a righteous son will rejoice greatly, and one who fathers a wise son will delight in him.”-Proverbs 23:24

**“Pay attention and listen to the sayings of the wise; apply your heart to what I teach,** <sup>18</sup>for it is pleasing when you keep them in your heart and have all of them ready on your lips. <sup>19</sup>**So that your trust may be in Yahweh,** I teach you today, even you.”-Proverbs 22:17-19

“Therefore everyone who **hears these words of mine and puts them into practice is like a wise man** who built his house on the rock.”-Jesus, Matthew 7:24

#### -by reflecting Jesus in my heart to my children

“As **water reflects a face, so a man’s heart reflects the man.**”-Proverbs 27:19

“may strengthen you with power through his Spirit in your inner being, <sup>17</sup>**so that Christ may dwell in your hearts** through faith. And I pray that you, being rooted and established in love”-Ephesians 3:16b-17

“The **righteous is walking habitually in his integrity, O the happiness of his sons after him!**”-Proverbs 20:7

#### -by loving them as Jesus would love them by taking them in my arms and blessing them

“Some people were bringing little children to Him so He might touch them, but His disciples rebuked them. <sup>14</sup>When Jesus saw it, He was indignant and said to them, **“Let the little children come to Me. Don’t stop them, for the kingdom of God belongs to such as these.** <sup>15</sup>I assure you: Whoever does not welcome the kingdom of God like a little child will never enter it.” <sup>16</sup>**After taking them in His arms, He laid His hands on them and blessed them.**”-Mark 10:13-16



## Section 3 (b.2) – Love others as Jesus did – love your children



### Love My Children and My Children in the Faith (continued)

**-by loving God and my wife more than my children and therefore not being child centered but instead God centered**

**“You shall have no other gods before Me”-Exodus 20:3**

**“But from the beginning of creation, God MADE THEM MALE AND FEMALE. <sup>7</sup> FOR THIS REASON A MAN SHALL LEAVE HIS FATHER AND MOTHER, <sup>8</sup> AND THE TWO SHALL BECOME ONE FLESH; so they are no longer two, but one flesh. <sup>9</sup> What therefore God has joined together, let no man separate.”-Jesus, Mark 10:6-9**

**-by having regular meetings with my wife (e.g.: once a week, etc.) and then as needed with wise council to plan how we will guide the children and point them to the Lord**

**“Those who plan what is good find love and faithfulness.”-Proverbs 14:22b**

**“The plans of the righteous are just.”-Proverbs 12:5a**

**“Without consultation, plans are frustrated, but with many counselors they succeed.”-Proverbs 15:22**

**“The plans of the heart belong to man, but the answer of the tongue is from the Lord. All the ways of a man are clean in his own sight, but the Lord weighs the motives. <sup>3</sup> Commit your works to the Lord and your plans will be established.”- Proverbs 16:1-3**

**“Prepare plans by consultation, and make war by wise guidance.”-Proverbs 20:18**

**“For by wise guidance you will wage war, and in abundance of counselors there is victory.”-Proverbs 24:6**

**-by releasing them into manhood and womanhood and then discipling them on what a man or woman is**

**“When I was a child, I talked like a child, I thought like a child, I reasoned like a child. **When I became a man, I put childish ways behind me.**”-1 Corinthians 13:11**



## Section 3 (b.3) – Love others as Jesus did – love your parents



### Love My Parents

#### -by loving them as their child through God honoring obedience

**"Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right."** <sup>2</sup>"Honor your father and mother"—which is the first commandment with a promise— <sup>3</sup>"that it may go well with you and that you may enjoy long life on the earth.""

-Ephesians 6:1-3, reference Deuteronomy 5:16

**"Children, obey your parents in all things, for this is well pleasing to the Lord."**-Colossians 3:19-21

**"A wise son brings joy to his father, but a foolish man despises his mother."**-Proverbs 15:20

**"slanderers, God-haters, arrogant, proud, boastful, inventors of evil, disobedient to parents"**-Romans 1:30

**"But know this: Difficult times will come in the last days. <sup>2</sup> For people will be lovers of self, lovers of money, boastful, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, ungrateful, unholy, <sup>3</sup> unloving, irreconcilable, slanderers, without self-control, brutal, without love for what is good"**-2 Timothy 3:1-3

#### **-honoring my parents by setting God honoring boundaries if my parents ask me to do something that goes against God's guidance (i.e.: deception, manipulation, selfish pride, dishonesty, impurity, greedy, immorality, etc.)**

**"Someone said to Him, "Behold, Your mother and Your brothers are standing outside seeking to speak to You."**

**48 But Jesus answered the one who was telling Him and said, "Who is My mother and who are My brothers?" 49 And stretching out His hand toward His disciples, He said, "Behold My mother and My brothers!"** - Matthew 12:47-49

**"Now the works of the flesh are obvious: sexual immorality, moral impurity, promiscuity, <sup>20</sup> idolatry, sorcery [witchcraft/manipulation], hatreds, strife, jealousy, outbursts of anger, selfish ambitions, dissensions, factions, <sup>21</sup> envy, drunkenness, carousing, and anything similar. I tell you about these things in advance—as I told you before—that those who practice such things will not inherit the kingdom of God."**-Galatians 5:19-21

#### -by honoring them in their old age

**"Honor widows who are widows indeed; <sup>4</sup> but if any widow has children or grandchildren, they must first learn to practice piety in regard to their own family and to make some return to their parents; for this is acceptable in the sight of God. <sup>5</sup> Now she who is a widow indeed and who has been left alone, has fixed her hope on God and continues in entreaties and prayers night and day."**-1 Timothy 5:3-5

**"Listen to your father, who gave you life, and do not despise your mother when she is old."**-Proverbs 23:22

**"He answered and said to them, "Why do you also transgress the commandment of God because of your tradition? <sup>4</sup> For God commanded, saying, 'Honor your father and your mother'; and, 'He who curses father or mother, let him be put to death.' <sup>5</sup> But you say, 'Whoever says to his father or mother, "Whatever profit you might have received from me is a gift to God" — <sup>6</sup> then he need not honor his father or mother.' Thus you have made the commandment of God of no effect by your tradition. <sup>7</sup> Hypocrites! Well did Isaiah prophesy about you, saying: <sup>8</sup> 'These people draw near to Me with their mouth, and honor Me with their lips, but their heart is far from Me. <sup>9</sup> And in vain they worship Me, teaching as doctrines the commandments of men.'"**-Jesus, Matthew 15:3-10

**"And I will not be a burden, for I seek not what is yours but you. For children are not obligated to save up for their parents, but parents for their children. <sup>15</sup> I will most gladly spend and be spent for your souls. If I love you more, am I to be loved less?"**

-2 Corinthians 12:13-15



Love the Local Church

As disciples of Jesus Christ  
we are to teach other disciples of Jesus Christ  
“to obey everything” Jesus Christ “commanded”.

*Note: teaching is much more than telling.  
It involves intentional faithful training.*

This includes intentional faithful training on what the  
Scriptures teach about the Church.

For Jesus Christ has designed the local church to:  
**“equip the His people for the work of ministry, for building  
up the body of Christ, until we all attain to the unity of the  
faith and of the knowledge of the Son of God, to mature  
adulthood, to the measure of the stature of the fullness of  
Christ, so that we may no longer be children, tossed to and  
fro by the waves and carried about by every wind of  
doctrine, by human cunning, by craftiness in deceitful  
schemes. Rather, speaking the truth in love, we are to grow  
up in every way into Him who is the head, into Christ, from  
whom the whole body, joined and held together by every  
joint with which it is equipped, when each part is working  
properly, makes the body grow so that it  
builds itself up in love.”**

– Ephesians 4:12-16





## Section 3 (b.4) – Love others as Jesus did – the local church

### A Scriptural View of the Structure of a Local Scriptural Church

A local church is a covenanted group of baptized members (true disciples of Jesus) under the authority of the Lord Jesus Christ who gather regularly and continually devote themselves to The Scriptures (sharing The Gospel and preaching and teaching from The Scriptures), fellowship, The Lord's Supper, and corporate worship and prayer (Acts 2:41-42, 6:2-4; Matt 18:15-20; 28:18-20, etc.)

**“Love one another, even as I have loved you . . .**

**By this all men will know that you are My disciples, if you have love for one another.” -Jesus, John 13:34-35**

**Jesus Christ is The Head of The Church - The Body of Christ**

**“Christ also is The Head of The Church, He Himself being The Savior of The Body . . . The Church is subject to Christ.”-Eph 5:23-24**

**Jesus is  
The Chief Shepherd**  
“The Chief  
Shepherd.”  
-1 Peter 5:4

**Jesus is  
The Brilliant One**  
“For everything was  
created by Him, in  
heaven and on  
earth, the visible  
and the invisible,  
whether thrones or  
dominions or rulers  
or authorities— all  
things have been  
created through  
Him and for Him. He  
is before all things,  
and by Him all  
things hold together  
. . . All the treasures  
of wisdom and  
knowledge are  
hidden in Him.”  
-Col. 1:16-17, 2:3

**Jesus is  
The Bridegroom**  
“Christ also loved  
the church and gave  
Himself up for her,  
so that He might  
sanctify her, having  
cleansed her by the  
washing of water  
with The Word, that  
He might present to  
Himself the church  
in all her glory,  
having no spot or  
wrinkle or any such  
thing; but that she  
would be holy and  
blameless.”  
-Ephesians 5:25-27

**Jesus is  
The High Priest**  
“For we do not have  
a high priest who is  
unable to  
sympathize with our  
weaknesses, but we  
have one who has  
been tempted in  
every way, just as  
we are—yet was  
without sin.”  
-Hebrews 4:15

**The Scriptures are  
Sufficient  
& Superior**  
“All Scripture is  
inspired by God  
and is profitable for  
teaching, for  
rebuking, for  
correcting, for  
training in  
righteousness, so  
that the man of  
God may be  
complete,  
equipped for every  
good work.”  
-2 Timothy 3:16-18  
“His divine power  
has given us  
everything required  
for life and  
godliness through  
the knowledge of  
Him who called us  
by His own glory  
and goodness. By  
these He has given  
us very great and  
precious promises,  
so that through  
them you may  
share in the divine  
nature, escaping  
the corruption that  
is in the world  
because of evil  
desires.”  
-2 Peter 1:3-4  
“For The Word of  
God is living and  
powerful, and  
sharper than any  
two-edged sword,  
piercing even to the  
division of soul and  
spirit, and of joints  
and marrow, and is  
a discernor of the  
thoughts and  
intent of the  
heart.”  
-Hebrews 4:12  
“This above all you  
must understand  
that no prophecy  
comes from one's  
own interpretation,  
for no prophecy  
ever came by the  
will of man, but  
moved by the Holy  
Spirit men spoke  
from God.”  
-2 Peter 1:20-21

**The covenanted members of the local church body – true believers who have obeyed the Lord by baptism/water immersion**  
“Just as each of us has one body with many members, and these members do not all have the same function, <sup>5</sup> so in Christ we who are many form one body, and each member belongs to all the others. <sup>6</sup> We have different gifts, according to the grace given us . . . <sup>7</sup> If it is serving, let him serve; if it is teaching, let him teach; <sup>8</sup> if it is encouraging/exhorting, let him encourage/exhort; if it is contributing to the needs of others, let him give generously; if it is leadership, let him govern diligently; if it is showing mercy, let him do it cheerfully.” <sup>9</sup> Love must be sincere. Hate what is evil; cling to what is good. <sup>10</sup> Be devoted to one another in brotherly love. Honor one another above yourselves. <sup>11</sup> Never be lacking in zeal, but keep your spiritual fervor, serving the Lord. <sup>12</sup> Be joyful in hope, patient in affliction, faithful in prayer. <sup>13</sup> Share with God's people who are in need. Practice hospitality. <sup>14</sup> Bless those who persecute you; bless and do not curse. <sup>15</sup> Rejoice with those who rejoice; mourn with those who mourn.”-Romans 12:4-15  
**Deacons in training/testing period** - “They must first be tested; and then if there is nothing against them, let them serve as deacons.”-1 Tim 3:10  
**The Secondary Scriptural Office - Deacons**  
**-The Scriptures teach that deacons must be qualified according to Scriptural standards:**  
“Deacons, likewise, are to be men worthy of respect, sincere, not indulging in much wine, and not pursuing dishonest gain. <sup>9</sup> They must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith with a clear conscience. . . <sup>11</sup> In the same way, their wives are to be women worthy of respect, not malicious talkers but temperate and trustworthy in everything. <sup>12</sup> A deacon must be the husband of but one wife and must manage his children and his household well.”-1 Tim 3:8-9, 11-12  
**Elders in training/testing period** - “Lay hands quickly on no man.”-1 Tim 5:22  
**The Primary Scriptural Office - Pastors/Elders/Overseers**  
**-The Scriptures teach a plurality of pastors/elders/overseers in a local church:**  
“He should call for the elders [plural] of the church [singular] and have them pray over him”-James 5:14;  
“appointed elders [plural] for them in every church [singular]”-Acts 14:23; “he sent to Ephesus, asking the elders [plural] of the church [singular]”-Acts 20:17  
**-The Scriptures teach that pastors/elders/overseers must be qualified according to Scriptural standards:**  
“Here is a trustworthy saying: If anyone sets his heart on being an overseer, he desires a noble task. <sup>2</sup> Now the overseer must be above reproach, the husband of but one wife, temperate, self-controlled, respectable, hospitable, able to teach, <sup>3</sup> not given to drunkenness, not violent but gentle, not quarrelsome, not a lover of money. <sup>4</sup> He must manage his own family well and see that his children obey him with proper respect. <sup>5</sup> (If anyone does not know how to manage his own family, how can he take care of God's church?) <sup>6</sup> He must not be a recent convert, or he may become conceited and fall under the same judgment as the devil. <sup>7</sup> He must also have a good reputation with outsiders, so that he will not fall into disgrace and into the devil's trap.” -1 Timothy 3:1-7  
“For this reason I left you in Crete, that you would set in order what remains and appoint elders in every city as I directed you, <sup>6</sup> namely, if any man is above reproach, the husband of one wife, having children who believe, not accused of dissipation or rebellion. <sup>7</sup> For the overseer must be above reproach as God's steward, not self-willed, not quick-tempered, not addicted to wine, not pugnacious, not fond of sordid gain, <sup>8</sup> but hospitable, loving what is good, sensible, just, devout, self-controlled, <sup>9</sup> holding fast the faithful word which is in accordance with the teaching, so that he will be able both to exhort in sound doctrine and to refute those who contradict.”-Titus 1:5-9  
**-The Scriptures teach that pastors/elders/overseers are to set an example as under-shepherds:**  
“To the elders among you, I appeal as a fellow elder, a witness of Christ's sufferings and one who also will share in the glory to be revealed: <sup>2</sup> Be shepherds of God's flock that is under your care, serving as overseers—not because you must, but because you are willing, as God wants you to be; not greedy for money, but eager to serve; <sup>3</sup> not lording it over those entrusted to you, but being examples to the flock. <sup>4</sup> And when the Chief Shepherd appears, you will receive the crown of glory that will never fade away.”-1 Peter 5:1-4; “In everything set them an example by doing what is good. In your teaching show integrity, seriousness <sup>8</sup> and soundness of speech that cannot be condemned, so that those who oppose you may be ashamed because they have nothing bad to say about us.”-Titus 2:7-8; “The elders who direct the affairs of the church well are worthy of double honor, especially those whose work is preaching and teaching. <sup>18</sup> For Scripture says, “Do not muzzle an ox while it is treading out the grain,” and “The worker deserves his wages.” <sup>19</sup> Do not entertain an accusation against an elder unless it is brought by two or three witnesses. <sup>20</sup> But those elders who are sinning you are to reprove before everyone, so that the others may take warning.”-1 Timothy 5:17-20  
**-The Scriptures teach that pastors/elders/overseers are to teach The Scriptures and teach sound doctrine from The Scriptures:**  
“Preach The Word; be ready in season and out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort, with great patience and instruction. <sup>3</sup> For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine.”-2 Timothy 4:2-3; “You must teach what is in accord with sound doctrine.”-Titus 2:1; “He must hold firm to the trustworthy Word as taught, so that he may be able to give instruction in sound doctrine and also to rebuke those who contradict it.”-Titus 1:9

**The Process of  
Growth is the  
Holy Spirit  
spiritually  
washing  
us with  
The Word of God  
by obedience  
through  
repentance  
(putting off)  
and trust  
(putting on)**  
“Sanctify  
[spiritually wash]  
them  
by The Truth;  
Your Word is  
Truth.”  
-Jesus, John  
17:17  
“You received The  
Word of God  
which you heard  
from us, you  
accepted it not as  
the word of men,  
but for what it  
really is, The  
Word of God,  
which also  
performs its work  
in you who  
believe.”  
-1 Thessalonians  
2:13  
“You heard about  
Him and were  
taught in Him,  
because the  
truth is in  
Jesus. <sup>22</sup> You put  
off your former  
way of life, the  
old self that is  
corrupted by  
deceitful  
desires; <sup>23</sup> you are  
being renewed in  
the spirit of your  
minds; <sup>24</sup> you put  
on the new self,  
the one  
created according  
to God's  
likeness in  
righteousness and  
purity of the  
truth.”  
-Ephesians  
4:21-24,  
Colossians  
3:1-15;  
Romans  
13:11-14

**Jesus is The Master  
Teacher**  
“For One is your  
Master Teacher,  
and you are all  
brothers.”  
-Jesus,  
Matthew 23:8  
**Jesus is The Master  
Leader**  
“One is your  
Master Leader, that  
is, Christ.”  
-Jesus,  
Matthew 23:10  
**Be Yoked to Jesus  
and Learn from  
Jesus**  
“Come to me, all  
you who are weary  
and burdened, and  
I will give you rest.  
<sup>29</sup> Take my yoke  
upon you and learn  
from me, for I am  
gentle and humble  
in heart, and you  
will find rest for  
your souls. <sup>30</sup> For  
my yoke is easy and  
my burden is light.”  
-Jesus,  
Matt. 11:28-30  
**God is with us in  
Jesus Christ  
The Savior King**  
“All authority in  
heaven and on  
earth has been  
given to me. Go,  
therefore, make  
disciples from all  
the nations,  
baptizing  
[immersing in  
water] them  
[disciples of Jesus  
Christ] into the  
name of the Father  
and of the Son and  
of the Holy Spirit,  
intentionally  
training them to  
obey everything I  
have commanded  
you. And behold, I  
am with you  
always, to the very  
end of the age.”  
-Jesus,  
Matthew 28:18-20

**The Gospel - Jesus Christ “died for our sins according to The Scriptures, He was buried, and He was raised on the third day according to The Scriptures.”-1 Cor 15:3-4**

**The Church is built on Christ Jesus – “Christ Jesus Himself being The Cornerstone”-Eph 2:20;**

**“For no man can lay a foundation other than the one which is laid, which is Jesus Christ.”-1 Cor 3:11**



## Section 3 (b.4) – Love others as Jesus did – the local church



### Some Scriptures for a Scriptural View of a Local Scriptural Church

A local church is a covenanted group of baptized members (true disciples of Jesus) under the authority of the Lord Jesus Christ who gather regularly and continually devote themselves to The Scriptures (sharing The Gospel and preaching and teaching from The Scriptures), fellowship, The Lord's Supper, and corporate worship and prayer (Acts 2:41-42, 6:2-4; Matt 18:15-20; 28:18-20, etc.)

**“Love one another, even as I have loved you . . .**

**By this all men will know that you are My disciples, if you have love for one another.”** -Jesus, John 13:34-35

Jesus Christ is The Head of The Church - The Body of Christ

**“Christ also is The Head of The Church, He Himself being The Savior of The Body . . . The Church is subject to Christ.”**

-Eph 5:23-24

The Church is built on Christ Jesus

**“Christ Jesus Himself being The Cornerstone”**-Eph 2:20

**“For no man can lay a foundation other than the one which is laid, which is Jesus Christ.”**-1 Cor 3:11

Jesus is The Chief Shepherd

**“The Chief Shepherd.”**-1 Peter 5:4

Jesus is The Brilliant One

**“For everything was created by Him, in heaven and on earth, the visible and the invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities— all things have been created through Him and for Him. He is before all things, and by Him all things hold together . . . All the treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden in Him.”**

-Col. 1:16-17, 2:3

Jesus is The Bridegroom

**“Christ also loved the church and gave Himself up for her, so that He might sanctify her, having cleansed her by the washing of water with The Word, that He might present to Himself the church in all her glory, having no spot or wrinkle or any such thing; but that she would be holy and blameless.”**-Ephesians 5:25-27

Jesus is The High Priest

**“For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but we have one who has been tempted in every way, just as we are—yet was without sin.”**-Hebrews 4:15

Jesus is The Master Teacher

**“For One is your Master Teacher, and you are all brothers.”**-Jesus, Matthew 23:8

Jesus is The Master Leader

**“One is your Master Leader, that is, Christ.”**-Jesus, Matthew 23:10

Be Yoked to Jesus and Learn from Jesus

**“Come to me, all you who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest. <sup>29</sup> Take my yoke upon you and learn from me, for I am gentle and humble in heart, and you will find rest for your souls. <sup>30</sup> For my yoke is easy and my burden is light.”**-Jesus, Matt. 11:28-30

God is with us in Jesus Christ The Savior King

**“All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. Go, therefore, make disciples from all the nations, baptizing [immersing in water] them [disciples of Jesus Christ] into the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, intentionally training them to obey everything I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the very end of the age.”**-Jesus, Matthew 28:18-20



## Section 3 (b.4) – Love others as Jesus did – the local church



### Some Scriptures for a Scriptural View of a Local Scriptural Church (continued)

The Gospel

Jesus Christ “died for our sins according to The Scriptures, He was buried, and He was raised on the third day according to The Scriptures.”-1 Cor 15:3-4

The Scriptures are Sufficient and Superior

“All Scripture is inspired by God and is profitable for teaching, for rebuking, for correcting, for training in righteousness, so that the man of God may be complete, equipped for every good work.”-2 Timothy 3:16-18

“His divine power has given us everything required for life and godliness through the knowledge of Him who called us by His own glory and goodness. By these He has given us very great and precious promises, so that through them you may share in the divine nature, escaping the corruption that is in the world because of evil desires.”-2 Peter 1:3-4

“For The Word of God is living and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the division of soul and spirit, and of joints and marrow, and is a discernor of the thoughts and intents of the heart.”-Hebrews 4:12

“This above all you must understand that no prophecy comes from one’s own interpretation, for no prophecy ever came by the will of man, but moved by the Holy Spirit men spoke from God.”-2 Peter 1:20-21

The Process of Growth is the Holy Spirit spiritually washing us with The Word of God by obedience through repentance (putting off) and trust (putting on)

“Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by The Truth; Your Word is Truth.”-Jesus, John 17:17

“You received The Word of God which you heard from us, you accepted it not as the word of men, but for what it really is, The Word of God, which also performs its work in you who believe.”-1 Thessalonians 2:13

“You heard about Him and were taught in Him, because the truth is in Jesus. <sup>22</sup> You put off your former way of life, the old self that is corrupted by deceitful desires; <sup>23</sup> you are being renewed in the spirit of your minds; <sup>24</sup> you put on the new self, the one created according to God’s likeness in righteousness and purity of the truth.”-Ephesians 4:21-24, Colossians 3:1-15; Romans 13:11-14

The covenanted members of the local church body should be true believers who have obeyed the Lord by baptism/water immersion

“Just as each of us has one body with many members, and these members do not all have the same function, <sup>5</sup> so in Christ we who are many form one body, and each member belongs to all the others. <sup>6</sup> We have different gifts, according to the grace given us ...<sup>7</sup> If it is serving, let him serve; if it is teaching, let him teach; <sup>8</sup> if it is encouraging/exhorting, let him encourage/exhort; if it is contributing to the needs of others, let him give generously; if it is leadership, let him govern diligently; if it is showing mercy, let him do it cheerfully.” <sup>9</sup> Love must be sincere. Hate what is evil; cling to what is good. <sup>10</sup> Be devoted to one another in brotherly love. Honor one another above yourselves. <sup>11</sup> Never be lacking in zeal, but keep your spiritual fervor, serving the Lord. <sup>12</sup> Be joyful in hope, patient in affliction, faithful in prayer. <sup>13</sup> Share with God’s people who are in need. Practice hospitality. <sup>14</sup> Bless those who persecute you; bless and do not curse. <sup>15</sup> Rejoice with those who rejoice; mourn with those who mourn.”-Romans 12:4-15



## Section 3 (b.4) – Love others as Jesus did – the local church



### Some Scriptures for a Scriptural View of a Local Scriptural Church (continued)

Deacons in training/testing period

**"They must first be tested; and then if there is nothing against them, let them serve as deacons."**-1 Tim 3:10

The Secondary Scriptural Office - Deacons

-The Scriptures teach that deacons must be qualified according to Scriptural standards:

**"Deacons, likewise, are to be men worthy of respect, sincere, not indulging in much wine, and not pursuing dishonest gain. 9 They must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith with a clear conscience...11 In the same way, their wives are to be women worthy of respect, not malicious talkers but temperate and trustworthy in everything. 12 A deacon must be the husband of but one wife and must manage his children and his household well."**-1 Tim 3:8-9,11-12

Elders in training/testing period

**"Lay hands quickly on no man."**-1 Tim 5:22

The Primary Scriptural Office - Pastors/Elders/Overseers

-The Scriptures teach a plurality of pastors/elders/overseers in a local church:

**"He should call for the elders [plural] of the church [singular] and have them pray over him"**-James 5:14

**"appointed elders [plural] for them in every church [singular]"**-Acts 14:23; **"he sent to Ephesus, asking the elders [plural] of the church [singular]"** -Acts 20:17

-The Scriptures teach that pastors/elders/overseers must be qualified according to Scriptural standards:

**"Here is a trustworthy saying: If anyone sets his heart on being an overseer, he desires a noble task. <sup>2</sup> Now the overseer must be above reproach, the husband of but one wife, temperate, self-controlled, respectable, hospitable, able to teach, <sup>3</sup> not given to drunkenness, not violent but gentle, not quarrelsome, not a lover of money. <sup>4</sup> He must manage his own family well and see that his children obey him with proper respect. 5 (If anyone does not know how to manage his own family, how can he take care of God's church?) 6 He must not be a recent convert, or he may become conceited and fall under the same judgment as the devil. 7 He must also have a good reputation with outsiders, so that he will not fall into disgrace and into the devil's trap."**

-1 Timothy 3:1-7

**"For this reason I left you in Crete, that you would set in order what remains and appoint elders in every city as I directed you, <sup>6</sup> namely, if any man is above reproach, the husband of one wife, having children who believe, not accused of dissipation or rebellion. <sup>7</sup> For the overseer must be above reproach as God's steward, not self-willed, not quick-tempered, not addicted to wine, not pugnacious, not fond of sordid gain, <sup>8</sup> but hospitable, loving what is good, sensible, just, devout, self-controlled, <sup>9</sup> holding fast the faithful word which is in accordance with the teaching, so that he will be able both to exhort in sound doctrine and to refute those who contradict."** -Titus 1:5-9

-The Scriptures teach that pastors/elders/overseers are to set an example as under-shepherds:

**"To the elders among you, I appeal as a fellow elder, a witness of Christ's sufferings and one who also will share in the glory to be revealed: <sup>2</sup> Be shepherds of God's flock that is under your care, serving as overseers—not because you must, but because you are willing, as God wants you to be; not greedy for money, but eager to serve; <sup>3</sup> not lording it over those entrusted to you, but being examples to the flock. 4 And when the Chief Shepherd appears, you will receive the crown of glory that will never fade away."**-1 Peter 5:1-4

**"In everything set them an example by doing what is good. In your teaching show integrity, seriousness and soundness of speech that cannot be condemned, so that those who oppose you may be ashamed because they have nothing bad to say about us."**-Titus 2:7-8

**"The elders who direct the affairs of the church well are worthy of double honor, especially those whose work is preaching and teaching. <sup>18</sup> For Scripture says, "Do not muzzle an ox while it is treading out the grain," and "The worker deserves his wages." <sup>19</sup> Do not entertain an accusation against an elder unless it is brought by two or three witnesses. <sup>20</sup> But those elders who are sinning you are to reprove before everyone, so that the others may take warning."**-1 Timothy 5:17-20



## Section 3 (b.4) – Love others as Jesus did – the local church



-The Scriptures teach that pastors/elders/overseers are to teach The Scriptures and teach sound doctrine from The Scriptures:

**“Preach the Word; be ready in season and out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort, with great patience and instruction. <sup>3</sup> For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine.”**-2 Timothy 4:2-3

**“You must teach what is in accord with sound doctrine.”**-Titus 2:1

**“He must hold firm to the trustworthy Word as taught, so that he may be able to give instruction in sound doctrine and also to rebuke those who contradict it.”**-Titus 1:9

**As Christians we are to:**

1. Love God with our whole being (in the home, in the church, and in the world)
2. Love others as Jesus loved them (in the home, in the church, and in the world)
3. Make disciples of Jesus who make disciples of Jesus (in the home, in the church, and in the world)
  1. The first part of making disciples is sharing the gospel (Mark 1:15).  
The local church is then to continue the discipleship process through:
    2. Baptizing true believers through water immersion in the name of The Father, The Son, and The Holy Spirit
    3. Preaching, teaching, and intentionally training them to obey The Scriptures as Jesus Christ commanded
    4. Praying together
    5. Worshiping together
    6. Fellowship together – both in large gatherings and in homes
    7. Continually training Christians to share the gospel (individually, corporately, and both locally and globally)
    8. Planting new churches (locally and globally) through sharing the gospel, establishing the leaders, etc.

**Teach Sound Doctrine from the Scriptures on (the following is a beginning basic list):**

### 1. The Scriptures

- 1.1 Jesus held to a verbal-plenary view of Scripture (that the very words of Scripture were inspired by God) and that all Scripture (both Old Testament and New Testament) is inspired/absolutely truthful/inerrant (in both intent and in fact)/absolutely infallible/authoritative
- 1.2 Jesus held to the *sufficiency* of the Scriptures and the *superiority* of the Scriptures

### 2. God

- 2.1 *GOD IS* - God is necessary [must be, has to be] being [that which is] /immutable/non-temporal/non-spatial/pure actuality/one/uncaused/omnipresent first cause/omniscient/omnipotent/omnibenevolent/personal; therefore, God is Perfect Love/Perfect Holiness/Perfect Righteousness/Perfect Truth/Perfect Wisdom/Perfectly Just/Perfect Joy/Perfect Peace/Perfect Kindness/Perfect Faithfulness/Perfect Patience/Perfect Grace/Perfect Mercy/Perfect Hope
- 2.2 Only One God that is Three Persons - The Trinity (The Father, The Son, The Holy Spirit) – Yahweh is One God (What 1) Yahweh is Three Persons (Who 1, Who 2, Who 3) “the name [singular not plural, What 1] of the Father [Who 1] and the Son [Who 2] and of the Holy Spirit [Who 3]”-Matt.28:19. The Father is not The Son, The Father is not the Holy Spirit, The Son is not the Father, The Son is not the Holy Spirit, The Holy Spirit is not the Father, The Holy Spirit is not The Son.

### 3. Jesus Christ (fully God the Son and the perfect man, the addition of a human nature NOT the subtraction of Deity, born of a virgin by the Holy Spirit, lived the perfect life completely without sin).

### 4. People (men, women, and their sinful condition)

### 5. The Gospel (Jesus Christ’s perfect life, substitutionary atoning death on the cross, burial, and physical resurrection from the dead)

### 6. Saved by God’s grace through The Gospel by Faith - True Repentance and True Faith/True Trust

### 7. The security of the true believer in Christ – once justified, always justified

### 8. How Christians are transformed – spiritually washed by the Holy Spirit through the Word of God – put off and put on

### 9. The Church

#### 9.1 The Bride of Christ (all true believers)

#### 9.2 The Church Local (covenanted group of baptized true believers under the authority of the Lord Jesus Christ)

##### 9.2.1 Qualifications of Elders and Deacons, qualifications to lead worship, etc.

##### 9.2.2 Titus 2:1-8

### 10. Two Ordinances (both of which are acts of obedience):

#### 10.1 Baptism (water immersion, a symbol – the water doesn’t change you)

#### 10.2 The Lord’s Supper (symbol – bread stays bread, the “fruit of the vine” stays “the fruit of the vine”)

### 11. The Issue of Sin and Evil and The Importance of the Substitutionary Atonement of Jesus Christ

### 12. Marriage (Matthew 19:4-6, Luke 16:18), roles in the marriage, the raising of children, etc.

### 13. The Physical Return of Jesus Christ

### 14. Everlasting Heaven and an Everlasting Hell





## Section 3 (b.4) – Love others as Jesus did – the local church



### The Lord's Supper is an Important Symbol of Obedience to Jesus Christ

#### A PHYSICAL DISTINCTION

When Jesus offered the physical unleavened bread and the physical fruit of the vine, He was physically there with His disciples. His disciples could clearly see the physical distinction between His physical body which was right there with them and the physical unleavened bread that He was using. Therefore, they could very clearly see and understand that the physical unleavened bread was only a symbol and not Jesus' real body. In the same way they could see that His physical blood stayed in His physical body and that the fruit of the vine in the cup that He used did not change into His physical blood but instead stayed the same. Therefore, they could very clearly see and understand that the physical fruit of the vine offered to them was only a symbol and not Jesus' physical blood. As the Scriptures state: "Now on the first day of Unleavened Bread the disciples came to Jesus, saying, 'Where do You want us to prepare for You to eat the Passover?' . . .<sup>26</sup> And while they were eating [physical food], Jesus took [physical] bread, and after a blessing, He broke it [the physical bread] and gave it [the physical bread] to the disciples, and said, 'Take, eat [the physical bread]; this is My body [notice the difference between Jesus' physical body and the physical bread].'<sup>27</sup> And when He had taken a cup and given thanks, He gave it to them, saying, 'Drink from it, all of you;<sup>28</sup> for this is My blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for forgiveness of sins.<sup>29</sup> But I say to you, I will not drink of this fruit of the vine [notice the difference between Jesus' physical blood that was in His physical body in the room with them and this physical fruit of the vine] from now on until that day when I drink it new with you in My Father's kingdom' (Matt. 26:17, 26-29). [Brackets added for commentary.] Note: The bread stays bread and the fruit of the vine stays fruit of the vine. There is no change to the bread and there is no change to the fruit of the vine. [Side note: You don't have to use a single shared cup, see Acts 2:41-42 where thousands of believers gathered.]

#### A SYMBOL OF THE NEW COVENANT

The Passover meal was a symbolic remembrance of what God had done during the Passover that occurred in Egypt. In a similar way, the Lord's supper is a symbolic remembrance of what God has done for us in the New Covenant (the sacrificial atoning death of Jesus Christ on cross for our sins). As the Scriptures state: "Then came the day of Unleavened Bread on which the Passover lamb had to be sacrificed. And He sent Peter and John, saying, 'Go and prepare the Passover for us, that we may eat it.' . . . And when the hour had come He reclined at the table, and the apostles with Him.<sup>15</sup> And He said to them, 'I have earnestly desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer;<sup>16</sup> for I say to you, I shall never again eat it until it is fulfilled in the kingdom of God.'<sup>17</sup> And when He had taken a cup *and* given thanks, He said, 'Take this and share it among yourselves;<sup>18</sup> for I say to you, I will not drink of the fruit of the vine from now on until the kingdom of God comes.'<sup>19</sup> And when He had taken *some* bread *and* given thanks, He broke *it*, and gave *it* to them, saying, 'This is My body which is given for you; do this in **remembrance of Me.**'<sup>20</sup> And **in the same way** He *took* the cup after they had eaten, saying, 'This cup which is poured out for you is **the new covenant in My blood**' (Lk. 22:7-8, 14-20).

#### A COMMAND TO REMEMBER TO PROCLAIM THE LORD'S SACRIFICIAL ATONING DEATH

The Scriptures described the Lord's Supper as an act of remembrance of Jesus Christ. As the Scriptures state: "For I received from the Lord that which I also delivered to you, that the Lord Jesus in the night in which He was betrayed took bread; and when He had given thanks, He broke it, and said, 'This is My body, which is for you; **do this in remembrance of Me.**'" In the same way He took the cup also, after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in My blood; do this, as often as you drink it, **in remembrance of Me**" (1Cor. 11:23).

#### THE LORD'S SUPPER DOES NOT SAVE YOU

We are saved through repentance of sin and trust in Jesus Christ, not through eating or drinking: **"The time has come," Jesus said. "The kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the good news!"**  
- Mark 1:15

#### DEALING WITH SIN – NOT BEING A HYPOCRITE

The Lord's supper is not for hypocrites (those who claim to be Christians and are not and those who are Christians but are living in unconfessed sin). As the Scriptures state: "But in giving this instruction, I do not praise you, because you come together not for the better but for the worse.<sup>18</sup> For, in the first place, **when you come together as a church**, I hear that divisions exist among you; and in part, I believe it.<sup>19</sup> For there must also be factions among you, in order that those who are approved may have become evident among you.<sup>20</sup> Therefore when you meet together, **it is not to eat the Lord's Supper,**<sup>21</sup> for in your eating each one takes his own supper first; and one is hungry and another is drunk.<sup>22</sup> What! **Do you not have houses in which to eat and drink?** Or do you **despise the church of God**, and shame those who have nothing? . . .<sup>23</sup> For I received from the Lord that which I also delivered to you, that the Lord Jesus in the night in which He was betrayed took bread;<sup>24</sup> and when He had given thanks, He broke it, and said, 'This is My body, which is for you; **do this in remembrance of Me.**'<sup>25</sup> In the same way He took the cup also, after supper, saying, 'This cup is the new covenant in My blood; do this, as often as you drink it, **in remembrance of Me.**'<sup>26</sup> **For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until He comes.**<sup>27</sup> Therefore whoever eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner, shall be guilty of the body and the blood of the Lord.<sup>28</sup> But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of the bread and drink of the cup.<sup>29</sup> For he who eats and drinks, eats and drinks judgment to himself, if he does not judge the body rightly.<sup>30</sup> For this reason many among you are weak and sick, and a number sleep.<sup>31</sup> But if we judged ourselves rightly, we should not be judged.<sup>32</sup> But when we are judged, we are disciplined by the Lord in order that we may not be condemned along with the world. So then, my brethren, when you come together to eat, wait for one another.<sup>34</sup> If anyone is hungry, let him eat at home, so that you may not come together for judgment" (1Cor. 11:17-34).

#### SOME CLARIFICATION

Jn. 6:25-69 is *not* dealing directly with the Lord's Supper. This is clear from the textual clues. Firstly, the Lord's Supper took place in an "upper room" (Mk. 14:15) in Jerusalem during the Passover (Mk. 14:16), contrasted to Jn. 6:59, which took place "in the synagogue, as He [Jesus] taught in Capernaum." Secondly, Jesus' teaching in Jn. 6 is not about the Lord's Supper, but is dealing specifically with the subject of belief (Jn. 6:29,35,40,47,64). In Jn. 6:29 Jesus states that the main point is to "believe in the One [Jesus] He [God the Father] has sent." Furthermore, Jesus explains, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to Me shall not hunger, and he who believes in Me shall never thirst. But I said to you, that you have seen Me, and yet do not believe" (Jn. 6:35). This is clearly not about the Lord's Supper; since, after one eats of the bread and drinks of the cup, they are still hungry and thirsty. Thus, the issue is belief. For the whole book of John was "written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing you may have life in His name" (Jn. 20:31). Thirdly, Jesus' use of bread in Jn. 6 is in *contrast* to the manna in Ex. 16. As physical water that comes from a well cannot give eternal life (Jn. 4:4-42), the manna in the wilderness could not give eternal life, but Jesus does. "My Father's will is that everyone who looks to the Son and believes in him shall have eternal life" (Jn. 6:40).





## Section 3 (b.4) – Love others as Jesus did – the local church



### Love the Local Church

**-by submitting to the leadership in my local church trusting that Jesus is the head of the church and that he has placed those in authority over me for a reason**

**“Christ is the head of the church.** He is the Savior of the body.”-Ephesians 5:23

**“Obey your leaders and submit to them,** for they keep watch over your souls as those who will give an account. **Let them do this with joy** and not with grief, for this would be unprofitable for you.”- Hebrews 13:17

**“The centurion replied, ‘Lord, I do not deserve to have you come under my roof. But just say the word,** and my servant will be healed. <sup>9</sup> **For I myself am a man under authority, with soldiers under me. I tell this one, ‘Go,’ and he goes; and that one, ‘Come,’ and he comes. I say to my servant, ‘Do this,’ and he does it.”** <sup>10</sup> **When Jesus heard this, he was astonished** and said to those following him, **“I tell you the truth, I have not found anyone in Israel with such great faith.”**-Matthew 8:8-10

**-by praying God’s Word for the leadership in my local church**

**“Remember your leaders who have spoken God’s word to you.** As you carefully observe the outcome of their lives, imitate their faith. <sup>8</sup> **Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, today, and forever.”**-Hebrews 13:7-8

**“Pray for us;** for we are convinced that we have a clear conscience, wanting to conduct ourselves honorably in everything. <sup>19</sup> **And I especially urge you to pray** that I may be restored to you very soon.”-Hebrews 13:18-21

**-by appropriately respecting my other brothers and sisters in Christ**

**“Do not rebuke an older man harshly, but exhort him as if he were your father. Treat younger men as brothers, <sup>2</sup> older women as mothers, and younger women as sisters, with absolute purity.”**-1 Timothy 5:1-2

**-by serving the local body with Jesus and as Jesus would – Jesus served even when it was inconvenient**

**“For even the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many.”**  
-Mark 10:45

**“The end of all things is near. Therefore be clear minded and self-controlled so that you can pray. <sup>8</sup> Above all, love each other deeply, because love covers over a multitude of sins. <sup>9</sup> Offer hospitality to one another without grumbling. <sup>10</sup> Each one should use whatever gift he has received to serve others, faithfully administering God’s grace in its various forms. <sup>11</sup> If anyone speaks, he should do it as one speaking the very words of God. If anyone serves, he should do it with the strength God provides, so that in all things God may be praised through Jesus Christ. To him be the glory and the power for ever and ever. Amen.”**-1 Peter 4:7-11

**“The apostles gathered around Jesus and reported to Him all that they had done and taught. <sup>31</sup> He said to them, ‘Come away by yourselves to a remote place and rest for a while.’ For many people were coming and going, and they did not even have time to eat. <sup>32</sup> So they went away in the boat by themselves to a remote place, <sup>33</sup> but many saw them leaving and recognized them. People ran there by land from all the towns and arrived ahead of them. <sup>34</sup> So as He stepped ashore, He saw a huge crowd and had compassion on them, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. Then He began to teach them many things.”**-Mark 6:30-34

**-by fully joining into the large group gathering and small group gatherings**

**“do not forsake the Gathering together”**-Hebrews 12:24-25

**“speaking to one another in psalms, hymns, and spiritual songs, singing and making music from your heart to the Lord”**-Ephesians 5:19

**“Let the message about the Messiah dwell richly among you, teaching and admonishing one another in all wisdom, and singing psalms, hymns, and spiritual songs, with gratitude in your hearts to God.”**-Colossians 3:16

**“Therefore, since we are receiving a kingdom that cannot be shaken, let us be thankful, and so worship God acceptably with reverence and awe, <sup>29</sup> for our ‘God is a consuming fire.’”**-Hebrews 11:28-29

**“They devoted themselves to the apostles’ teaching and to the fellowship, to the breaking of bread and to prayer. <sup>43</sup> Everyone was filled with awe, and many wonders and miraculous signs were done by the apostles. <sup>44</sup>**



## Section 3 (b.4) – Love others as Jesus did – the local church



### Love the Local Church (continued)

All the believers were together and had everything in common. <sup>45</sup> Selling their possessions and goods, they gave to anyone as he had need. <sup>46</sup> Every day they continued to meet together in the temple courts. They broke bread in their homes and ate together with glad and sincere hearts, <sup>47</sup> praising God and enjoying the favor of all the people. And the Lord added to their number daily those who were being saved.”-Acts 2:42-47

#### -by appropriately celebrating The Lord’s Supper

“But in giving this instruction, I do not praise you, because you come together not for the better but for the worse. <sup>18</sup> For, in the first place, **when you come together as a church**, I hear that divisions exist among you; and in part, I believe it. <sup>19</sup> For there must also be factions among you, in order that those who are approved may have become evident among you. <sup>20</sup> Therefore when you meet together, **it is not to eat the Lord’s Supper**, <sup>21</sup> for in your eating each one takes his own supper first; and one is hungry and another is drunk. <sup>22</sup> What! **Do you not have houses in which to eat and drink?** Or do you **despise the church of God**, and shame those who have nothing? . . . <sup>23</sup> For I received from the Lord that which I also delivered to you, that the Lord Jesus in the night in which He was betrayed took bread; <sup>24</sup> and when He had given thanks, He broke it, and said, “This is My body, which is for you; **do this in remembrance of Me.**” <sup>25</sup> In the same way He took the cup also, after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in My blood; do this, as often as you drink it, **in remembrance of Me.**” <sup>26</sup> **For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord’s death until He comes.** <sup>27</sup> **Therefore whoever eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner, shall be guilty of the body and the blood of the Lord.** <sup>28</sup> **But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of the bread and drink of the cup.** <sup>29</sup> **For he who eats and drinks, eats and drinks judgment to himself, if he does not judge the body rightly.** <sup>30</sup> For this reason many among you are weak and sick, and a number sleep. <sup>31</sup> But if we judged ourselves rightly, we should not be judged. <sup>32</sup> But when we are judged, we are disciplined by the Lord in order that we may not be condemned along with the world. So then, my brethren, when you come together to eat, wait for one another. <sup>34</sup> If anyone is hungry, let him eat at home, so that you may not come together for judgment.”-1 Corinthians 11:17-34

#### -by meeting regularly with godly mentors addressing issues where I lack maturity

“A wise man will hear and increase in learning, and a man of understanding will acquire wise counsel”

-Proverbs 1:5

“Pride only breeds quarrels, but wisdom is found in those who take advice.”-Proverbs 13:10

**“It was he who gave some to be apostles, some to be prophets, some to be evangelists, and some to be pastors and teachers, <sup>12</sup> to prepare God’s people for works of service, so that the body of Christ may be built up <sup>13</sup> until we all reach unity in the faith and in the knowledge of the Son of God and become mature, attaining to the whole measure of the fullness of Christ. <sup>14</sup> Then we will no longer be infants, tossed back and forth by the waves, and blown here and there by every wind of teaching and by the cunning and craftiness of men in their deceitful scheming. <sup>15</sup> Instead, speaking the truth in love, we will in all things grow up into him who is the Head, that is, Christ. <sup>16</sup> From him the whole body, joined and held together by every supporting ligament, grows and builds itself up in love, as each part does its work.”-Ephesians 4:11-16**

#### -by being a good friend to my inner circle of friends who are strong believers

“A man of too many friends comes to ruin [literally – broken in pieces], but **there is a friend who sticks closer than a brother.**”-Proverbs 18:24

“When David had finished speaking with Saul, **Jonathan committed himself to David, and loved him as much as he loved himself.** <sup>2</sup> Saul kept David with him from that day on and did not let him return to his father’s house. <sup>3</sup> Jonathan made a covenant with David **because he loved him as much as himself.**”-1 Samuel 18:1-3

“He who willfully separates and estranges himself [from God and man] seeks his own desire and pretext to break out against all wise and sound judgment.”-Proverbs 18:1

“The righteous should choose his friends carefully, for the way of the wicked leads them astray.”-Proverbs 12:26



## Section 3 (b.4) – Love others as Jesus did – the local church



### Love the Local Church (continued)

“Whoever walks with the wise becomes wise, but the companion of fools will suffer harm.”-Proverbs 13:20

“He who covers and forgives an offense seeks love, but he who repeats or harps on a matter separates even close friends.”-Proverbs 17:9

“Above all things have intense and unfailing love for one another, for love covers a multitude of sins [forgives and disregards the offenses of others].”-1 Peter 4:8

“Faithful are the wounds of a friend, but the kisses of an enemy are lavish and deceitful.”-Proverbs 27:6

“Oil and perfume make the heart glad, so a man’s counsel is sweet to his friend.”-Proverbs 27:9

“A man of many companions may come to ruin, but there is a friend who sticks closer than a brother.”-Proverbs 18:24

“As iron sharpens iron, so one man sharpens another.”-Proverbs 27:17

“Whoever rebukes a man will afterward find more favor than he who flatters with his tongue.”-Proverbs 28:23

“And if someone overpowers one person, two can resist him. A cord of three strands is not easily broken.”

-Ecclesiastes 4:12

### -by fully joining into discipling others as God directs

“go and make disciples from all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,<sup>20</sup> and **teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you**. And surely I am with you always, to the very end of the age.”-Jesus, Matthew 28:19-20

#### -discipling an inner circle (e.g.: 3, a “Peter”, a “James”, a “John”)

“After six days Jesus took Peter, James, and his brother John and led them up on a high mountain by themselves.”-Matthew 17:1

“He did not let anyone accompany Him except Peter, James, and John, James’s brother.”-Mark 5:37

“After six days Jesus took Peter, James, and John and led them up on a high mountain by themselves to be alone. He was transformed in front of them”-Mark 9:2

“While He was sitting on the Mount of Olives across from the temple complex, Peter, James, John, and Andrew asked Him privately”-Mark 13:3

“He took Peter, James, and John with Him, and He began to be deeply distressed and horrified.”-Mark 14:33

“After He came to the house, He let no one enter with Him except Peter, John, James, and the child’s father and mother.”-Luke 8:51

“About eight days after these words, He took along Peter, John, and James and went up on the mountain to pray.”-Luke 9:28

#### -discipling a small group (e.g.: 12 –“the twelve disciples”)

“He appointed the Twelve”-Mark 3:16

“When He was alone with the Twelve, those who were around Him asked Him about the parables.”-Mark 4:10

“Summoning His twelve disciples, He gave them authority.”-Matthew 10:1

#### -discipling a large group (e.g.: 72 –“seventy-two others”)

“After this the Lord appointed seventy-two others and sent them two by two ahead of him to every town and place where he was about to go.”-Luke 10:1

#### -discipling the crowds (the multitude)

“When Jesus had finished this sermon, **the crowds** were astonished at His teaching,”-Matthew 7:28

“**Huge crowds followed Him**, and He healed them all.”-Matthew 12:15

“Then **Jesus spoke to the crowds** and to His disciples”-Matthew 23:1

“So as He stepped ashore, **He saw a huge crowd and had compassion on them**, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. Then He began to teach them many things.”-Mark 6:34



## Section 3 (b.4) – Love others as Jesus did – the local church



### Love the Local Church (continued)

**-by crying out to God by fasting and praying for the local church until breakthrough comes, understanding that the battle is NOT against flesh and blood**

**“So I turned to the Lord God and pleaded with him in prayer and petition, in fasting, and in sackcloth and ashes . . . <sup>12</sup> Then he continued, “Do not be afraid, Daniel. Since the first day that you set your mind to gain understanding and to humble yourself before your God, your words were heard, and I have come in response to them. <sup>13</sup> But the prince of the Persian kingdom resisted me twenty-one days.”-Daniel 9:3-10:12**

**“King Hezekiah and the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz cried out in prayer to heaven about this. <sup>21</sup> And Yahweh sent an angel, who annihilated all the fighting men and the leaders and officers in the camp of the Assyrian king.”-2 Chronicles 32:20-21**

**““Don’t be afraid,” the prophet answered. “Those who are with us are more than those who are with them.” <sup>17</sup> And Elisha prayed, “O Yahweh, open his eyes so he may see.” Then Yahweh opened the servant’s eyes, and he looked and saw the hills full of horses and chariots of fire all around Elisha. <sup>18</sup> As the enemy came down toward him, Elisha prayed to Yahweh, “Strike these people with blindness.” So he struck them with blindness, as Elisha had asked.”-2 Kings 6:16-18**

**“Finally, be strong in the Lord and in his mighty power. <sup>11</sup> Put on the full armor of God so that you can take your stand against the devil’s schemes. <sup>12</sup> For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the powers of this dark world and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms. <sup>13</sup> Therefore put on the full armor of God, so that when the day of evil comes, you may be able to stand your ground, and after you have done everything, to stand. <sup>14</sup> Stand firm then, with the belt of truth buckled around your waist, with the breastplate of righteousness in place, <sup>15</sup> and with your feet fitted with the readiness that comes from the gospel of peace. <sup>16</sup> In addition to all this, take up the shield of faith, with which you can extinguish all the flaming arrows of the evil one. <sup>17</sup> Take the helmet of salvation and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God. <sup>18</sup> And pray in the Spirit on all occasions with all kinds of prayers and requests. With this in mind, be alert and always keep on praying for all the saints. <sup>19</sup> Pray also for me, that whenever I open my mouth, words may be given me so that I will fearlessly make known the mystery of the gospel, <sup>20</sup> for which I am an ambassador in chains. Pray that I may declare it fearlessly, as I should.”-Ephesians 6:10-20**

**“The end of all things is near. Therefore be clear minded and self-controlled so that you can pray. <sup>8</sup> Above all, love each other deeply, because love covers over a multitude of sins.”-1 Peter 4:7-8**

**“Epaphras, who is one of you and a servant of Christ Jesus, sends greetings. He is always wrestling in prayer for you, that you may stand firm in all the will of God, mature and fully assured. <sup>13</sup> I vouch for him that he is working hard for you and for those at Laodicea and Hierapolis.”**

**-Colossians 4:12-13**

**“Devote yourselves to prayer, being watchful and thankful. <sup>3</sup> And pray for us, too, that God may open a door for our message, so that we may proclaim the mystery of Christ, for which I am in chains. <sup>4</sup> Pray that I may proclaim it clearly, as I should. <sup>5</sup> Be wise in the way you act toward outsiders; make the most of every opportunity. <sup>6</sup> Let your conversation be always full of grace, seasoned with salt, so that you may know how to answer everyone.”-Colossians 4:2-6**

**“While they were worshipping the Lord and fasting, the Holy Spirit said, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them.”-Acts 13:2**

**“they raised their voices together in prayer to God. “Sovereign Lord,” they said, “you made the heaven and the earth and the sea, and everything in them . . . <sup>29</sup> Now, Lord, consider their threats and enable your servants to speak your word with great boldness. <sup>30</sup> Stretch out your hand to heal and perform miraculous signs and wonders through the name of your holy servant Jesus.” <sup>31</sup> After they prayed, the place where they were meeting was shaken. And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and spoke the word of God boldly.”-Acts 4:24b, 29-31**



## Section 3 (b.4) – Love others as Jesus did – the local church



### Love the Local Church (continued)

“At the time of sacrifice, the **prophet Elijah stepped forward and prayed**: “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac and Israel, let it be known today that you are God in Israel and that I am your servant and have done all these things at your command. <sup>37</sup> Answer me, O Yahweh, answer me, so these people will know that you, O Yahweh, are God, and that you are turning their hearts back again.” <sup>38</sup> Then the fire of Yahweh fell and burned up the sacrifice, the wood, the stones and the soil, and also licked up the water in the trench.”-1 Kings 18:36-38

“Samuel said, “Gather all Israel at Mizpah, and **I will pray to Yahweh on your behalf.**”<sup>6</sup> When they gathered at Mizpah, they drew water and poured it out in the Lord’s presence. **They fasted that day, and there they confessed . . . “Don’t stop crying out to the Lord our God for us, so that He will save us from the hand of the Philistines.**”-1 Samuel 7:5-8

“In the same way the Spirit also helps our weakness; for **we do not know how to pray as we should, but the Spirit Himself intercedes for us with groanings too deep for words [literally -groanings unutterable];** <sup>27</sup> and He who searches the hearts knows what the mind of the Spirit is, because He intercedes for the saints according to the will of God.”-Romans 8:26-27

### **-by being an active healthy body part by using my God given gifts and using it by the power of the Holy Spirit**

“For by the grace given me I say to every one of you: Do not think of yourself more highly than you ought, but rather think of yourself with sober judgment, in accordance with the measure of faith God has given you. <sup>4</sup> Just as each of us has one body with many members, and these members do not all have the same function, <sup>5</sup> **so in Christ we who are many form one body, and each member belongs to all the others.** <sup>6</sup> **We have different gifts, according to the grace given us.** If a man's gift is prophesying, let him use it in proportion to his faith. <sup>7</sup> If it is serving, let him serve; if it is teaching, let him teach; <sup>8</sup> if it is encouraging/exhorting, let him encourage/exhort; if it is contributing to the needs of others, let him give generously; if it is leadership, let him govern diligently; if it is showing mercy, let him do it cheerfully.” <sup>9</sup> Love must be sincere. Hate what is evil; cling to what is good. <sup>10</sup> Be devoted to one another in brotherly love. Honor one another above yourselves. <sup>11</sup> Never be lacking in zeal, but keep your spiritual fervor, serving the Lord. <sup>12</sup> Be joyful in hope, patient in affliction, faithful in prayer. <sup>13</sup> Share with God’s people who are in need. Practice hospitality. <sup>14</sup> Bless those who persecute you; bless and do not curse. <sup>15</sup> Rejoice with those who rejoice; mourn with those who mourn.”-Romans 12:3-15

<b>Gifts (12 Motivational Gifts)</b>	<b>How to Use the gift in the Body</b>	<b>Instructions on Use of the gift. Applicable to that Specific Gift &amp; to All</b>
If gift is prophesying	let him use it in proportion to his faith.	Love must be sincere [without hypocrisy]. Hate [abhor] what is evil; cling to what is good.
If it is serving	let him serve	Be devoted to one another in brotherly love; honor one another above yourselves
If it is teaching	let him teach	Never be lacking in zeal [diligence], but keep your spiritual fervor [fervent in spirit], serving the Lord
If it is encouraging/exhorting	let him encourage/exhort	Be joyful [rejoicing] in hope, patient [persevering] in affliction [tribulation], faithful [devoted] in prayer.
If it is contributing to the needs of others	let him give generously	Share with God’s people who are in need [contributing to the needs of the saints]. Practice hospitality.
If it is leadership	let him govern diligently	bless those who persecute you; bless and do not curse
If it is showing mercy	let him do it cheerfully	rejoice with those who rejoice and mourn [weep] with those who mourn [weep]



## Section 3 (b.4) – Love others as Jesus did – the local church



### Love the Local Church (continued)

#### **-by being open to the Holy Spirit's calling on my life to step into specific Ministry Calling to Prepare God's People for Works of Service:**

"But to each one of us grace has been given as Christ apportioned it.<sup>8</sup> This is why it says: "When he ascended on high, he led captives in his train and gave gifts to men."<sup>9</sup> (What does "he ascended" mean except that he also descended to the lower, earthly regions?<sup>10</sup> He who descended is the very one who ascended higher than all the heavens, in order to fill the whole universe.)<sup>11</sup> It was he who gave some to be apostles, some to be prophets, some to be evangelists, and some to be pastors and teachers,<sup>12</sup> to prepare God's people for works of service, so that the body of Christ may be built up<sup>13</sup> until we all reach unity in the faith and in the knowledge of the Son of God and become mature, attaining to the whole measure of the fullness of Christ."

-Ephesians 4:7-13

#### **The term apostles and prophets in the book of Ephesians was limited to those whom the Scripture was God-breathed through them:**

"Built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Christ Jesus himself being the cornerstone" - Eph. 2:20

"which was not made known to the sons of men in other generations as it has now been revealed to his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit." - Eph. 3:5

apostles, some to be prophets

#### **Ministry Callings that are applicable for today:**

Teaching Ministry (equipping others by teaching the Scriptures)

Pastoral/Shepherding Ministry (shepherding others by teaching the Scriptures)

Evangelism Ministry (equipping others by to share the gospel and church planting)

#### **-by contributing financially to the work of my local body and sharing with those in need**

"And do not forget to do good and to share with others, for with such sacrifices God is pleased." - Hebrews 13:16

For additional Scriptures on giving to my local church, etc.  
please see the section at the end of this atlas entitled:  
*A Look at Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances*





## Section 3 (b.5) – Love others as Jesus did – The Bride of Christ



### Love the Bride of Christ/the Body of Christ

#### -by praying and interceding for unity

"My prayer is not for them alone. I pray also for those who will believe in me through their message, <sup>21</sup>that all of them may be one, Father, just as you are in me and I am in you. May they also be in us so that the world may believe that you have sent me. <sup>22</sup>I have given them the glory that you gave me, that they may be one as we are one: <sup>23</sup>I in them and you in me. May they be brought to complete unity to let the world know that you sent me and have loved them even as you have loved me. <sup>24</sup>"Father, I want those you have given me to be with me where I am, and to see my glory, the glory you have given me because you loved me before the creation of the world. <sup>25</sup>"Righteous Father, though the world does not know you, I know you, and they know that you have sent me. <sup>26</sup>I have made you known to them, and will continue to make you known in order that the love you have for me may be in them and that I myself may be in them." -Jesus, John 17:20-26

"May the God who gives endurance and encouragement give you a spirit of unity among yourselves as you follow Christ Jesus, <sup>6</sup> so that with one heart and mouth you may glorify the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ." -Romans 15:5-6

#### -by praying for identity in the love of Christ & the power of God would be expressed in His body

"For this reason, ever since I heard about your faith in the Lord Jesus and your love for all the saints, <sup>16</sup> I have not stopped giving thanks for you, remembering you in my prayers. <sup>17</sup> I keep asking that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the glorious Father, **may give you the Spirit of wisdom and revelation, so that you may know him better.** <sup>18</sup> I pray also that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened in order that **you may know** the hope to which he has called you, the riches of his glorious inheritance in the saints, <sup>19</sup> and **his incomparably great power for us who believe. That power is like the working of his mighty strength,** <sup>20</sup> **which he exerted in Christ when he raised him from the dead** and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly realms, <sup>21</sup> far above all rule and authority, power and dominion, and every title that can be given, not only in the present age but also in the one to come. <sup>22</sup> And God placed all things under his feet and appointed him to be head over everything for the church, <sup>23</sup> which is his body, the fullness of him who fills everything in every way." -Ephesians 1:15-23

"For this reason I kneel before the Father, <sup>15</sup>from whom his whole family in heaven and on earth derives its name. <sup>16</sup>**I pray that out of his glorious riches He may strengthen you with power through his Spirit in your inner being,** <sup>17</sup>so that Christ may dwell in your hearts through faith. And I pray that you, **being rooted and established in love,** <sup>18</sup>**may have power, together with all the saints, to grasp how wide and long and high and deep is the love of Christ,** <sup>19</sup>and to know this love that surpasses knowledge—that you may be filled to the measure of all the fullness of God. <sup>20</sup>**Now to Him who is able to do immeasurably more than all we ask or imagine, according to His power that is at work within us,** <sup>21</sup>**to Him be glory in the church** and in Christ Jesus throughout all generations, for ever and ever! Amen." -Ephesians 3:14-20

#### -by praying that God would raise up Harvesters

"After this the Lord appointed seventy-two others and sent them two by two ahead of him to every town and place where he was about to go. <sup>2</sup> He told them, **"The harvest is plentiful, but the workers are few.** Ask the Lord of the harvest, therefore, to send out workers into his harvest field. <sup>3</sup> Go! I am sending you out like lambs among wolves." -Luke 10:1-3



## Section 3 (b.5) – Love others as Jesus did – The Bride of Christ



### Love the Bride of Christ/the Body of Christ

**-by being willing to go to the nations, contributing how God directs, and praying for those who have gone**

**““Look up at the heavens and count the stars —if indeed you can count them.” Then he said to him, “So shall your offspring be.”**<sup>6</sup> Abram believed the Lord, and he credited it to him as righteousness.”-Genesis 15:5-6

**“go and make disciples from all the nations”**-Jesus, Matthew 28:19-20

**“And this gospel of the kingdom will be preached in the whole world as a testimony to all nations, and then the end will come.”**-Jesus, Matthew 24:14

**“And when he had taken it, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders fell down before the Lamb. Each one had a harp and they were holding golden bowls full of incense, which are the prayers of the saints.”**<sup>9</sup> And they sang a new song:

**“You are worthy to take the scroll and to open its seals, because you were slain, and with your blood **you purchased men for God from every tribe and language and people and nation.****<sup>10</sup> You have made them to be a kingdom and priests to serve our God, and they will reign on the earth.”- Revelation 5:8-10

**“When he opened the fifth seal, I saw **under the altar the souls of those who had been slain because of the word of God and the testimony they had maintained.****<sup>10</sup> They called out in a loud voice, “How long, Sovereign Lord, holy and true, until you judge the inhabitants of the earth and avenge our blood?”<sup>11</sup> Then each of them was given a white robe, and they were told to wait a little longer, **until the number of their fellow servants and brothers who were to be killed as they had been was completed.**”-Revelation 6:9-11

**“After this I looked and there **before me was a great multitude that no one could count, from every nation, tribe, people and language,**** standing before the throne and in front of the Lamb. They were wearing white robes and were holding palm branches in their hands.”<sup>10</sup> And they cried out in a loud voice: “Salvation belongs to our God, who sits on the throne, and to the Lamb.”-Revelation 7:9-10



Intentionally Remember – Matthew 22:39



# **“Love your neighbor.” -Jesus, Matthew 22:39**

Consider the following:

<sup>29</sup> But wishing to justify himself, he said to Jesus, “And who is my neighbor?” <sup>30</sup> Jesus replied and said, “A certain man was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho; and he fell among robbers, and they stripped him and <sup>1</sup>beat him, and went off leaving him half dead. <sup>31</sup> “And by chance a certain priest was going down on that road, and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side. <sup>32</sup> “And likewise a Levite also, when he came to the place and saw him, passed by on the other side. <sup>33</sup> “But a certain Samaritan, who was on a journey, came upon him; and when he saw him, he felt compassion, <sup>34</sup> and came to him, and bandaged up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on *them*; and he put him on his own beast, and brought him to an inn, and took care of him. <sup>35</sup> “And on the next day he took out two <sup>1</sup>denarii and gave them to the innkeeper and said, ‘Take care of him; and whatever more you spend, when I return, I will repay you.’ <sup>36</sup> “Which of these three do you think proved to be a neighbor to the man who fell into the robbers’ hands?” <sup>37</sup> And he said, “The one who showed mercy toward him.” And Jesus said to him, “Go and do the same.” – Luke 10:29-37



## Section 3 (c) – Love your neighbor as Jesus did



### Love anyone God brings across your path

#### -Who is my neighbor?"

<sup>25</sup> On one occasion an expert in the law stood up to test Jesus. "Teacher," he asked, "what must I do to inherit eternal life?" <sup>26</sup> "What is written in the Law?" he replied. "How do you read it?" <sup>27</sup> He answered: "'Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength and with all your mind'; and, 'Love your neighbor as yourself.'" <sup>28</sup> "You have answered correctly," Jesus replied. "Do this and you will live." <sup>29</sup> But wishing to justify himself, he said to Jesus, "And who is my neighbor?" <sup>30</sup> Jesus replied and said, "A certain man was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho; and he fell among robbers, and they stripped him and <sup>1</sup>beat him, and went off leaving him half dead. <sup>31</sup> "And by chance a certain priest was going down on that road, and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side. <sup>32</sup> "And likewise a Levite also, when he came to the place and saw him, passed by on the other side. <sup>33</sup> "But a certain Samaritan, who was on a journey, came upon him; and when he saw him, he felt compassion, <sup>34</sup> and came to him, and bandaged up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on *them*; and he put him on his own beast, and brought him to an inn, and took care of him. <sup>35</sup> "And on the next day he took out two <sup>1</sup>denarii and gave them to the innkeeper and said, 'Take care of him; and whatever more you spend, when I return, I will repay you.' <sup>36</sup> **"Which of these three do you think proved to be a neighbor to the man who fell into the robbers' hands?"** <sup>37</sup> And he said, "The one who showed mercy toward him." And Jesus said to him, "Go and do the same." – Luke 10:25-37

"Whoever shows contempt for his neighbor lacks sense"-Proverbs 11:12

"With his mouth the ungodly destroys his neighbor, but through knowledge the righteous are rescued."

-Proverbs 11:9

"Live in harmony with one another. Do not be proud, but be willing to associate with people of low position. Do not be conceited."-Romans 12:16

#### -Your neighbor includes the needy and the foreigner (those of a different culture or background), the elderly, the deaf, the blind, the lame, etc.

**"Now when you reap the harvest of your land, you shall not reap to the very corners of your field, nor shall you gather the gleanings of your harvest. <sup>10</sup>Nor shall you glean your vineyard, nor shall you gather the fallen fruit of your vineyard; you shall leave them for the needy and for the stranger. I am Yahweh your God.**

<sup>11</sup> **'You shall not steal, nor deal falsely, nor lie to one another. <sup>12</sup> You shall not swear falsely by My name, so as to profane the name of your God; I am Yahweh.**

<sup>13</sup> **'You shall not oppress your neighbor, nor rob him. The wages of a hired man are not to remain with you all night until morning. <sup>14</sup> You shall not curse a deaf man, nor place a stumbling block before the blind, but you shall revere your God; I am Yahweh.**

<sup>15</sup> **'You shall do no injustice in judgment; you shall not be partial to the poor nor defer to the great, but you are to judge your neighbor fairly. <sup>16</sup> You shall not go about as a slanderer among your people, and you are not to act against the life of your neighbor; I am Yahweh.**

<sup>17</sup> **'You shall not hate your fellow countryman in your heart; you may surely reprove your neighbor, but shall not incur sin because of him. <sup>18</sup> You shall not take vengeance, nor bear any grudge against the sons of your people, but you shall love your neighbor as yourself; I am Yahweh . . . <sup>29</sup> 'Do not profane your daughter by making her a harlot, so that the land will not fall to harlotry and the land become full of lewdness . . . <sup>31</sup> 'Do not turn to mediums or spiritists; do not seek them out to be defiled by them. I am Yahweh your God. <sup>32</sup> **'You shall rise up before the grayheaded and honor the aged, and you shall revere your God; I am Yahweh. <sup>33</sup> 'When a stranger resides with you in your land, you shall not do him wrong. <sup>34</sup> The stranger who resides with you shall be to you as the native among you, and you shall love him as yourself, for you were aliens in the land of Egypt; I am Yahweh your God. <sup>35</sup> 'You shall do no wrong in judgment, in measurement of weight, or capacity. <sup>36</sup> You shall have just balances, just weights . . . I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out from the land of Egypt. <sup>37</sup> You shall thus observe all My statutes and all My ordinances and do them; I am Yahweh.'"****

-Leviticus 19:9-13,29,31-37



## Section 3 (c) – Love your neighbor as Jesus did



### Love orphans, widows, and the poor

“Then the King will say to those on his right, ‘Come, you who are blessed by my Father; take your inheritance, the kingdom prepared for you since the creation of the world.’ <sup>35</sup>**For I was hungry and you gave me something to eat, I was thirsty and you gave me something to drink, I was a stranger and you invited me in, <sup>36</sup>I needed clothes and you clothed me, I was sick and you looked after me, I was in prison and you came to visit me.**’ <sup>37</sup>

“Then the righteous will answer him, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you, or thirsty and give you something to drink?’ <sup>38</sup>When did we see you a stranger and invite you in, or needing clothes and clothe you?

<sup>39</sup>When did we see you sick or in prison and go to visit you?’ <sup>40</sup>**“The King will reply, ‘I tell you the truth, whatever you did for one of the least of these brothers of mine, you did for me.’”**-Matthew 25:34-40

“Religion that God our Father accepts as pure and faultless is this: to look after orphans and widows in their distress and to keep oneself from being polluted by the world.”-James 1:27, Deuteronomy 15:11

“Is not this the kind of fasting I have chosen: to loose the chains of injustice and untie the cords of the yoke, to set the oppressed free and break every yoke? <sup>7</sup> **Is it not to share your food with the hungry and to provide the poor wanderer with shelter— when you see the naked, to clothe him, and not to turn away from your own flesh and blood?** <sup>8</sup> Then your light will break forth like the dawn, and your healing will quickly appear; then your righteousness will go before you, and the glory of Yahweh will be your rear guard. <sup>9</sup> Then you will call, and Yahweh will answer; you will cry for help, and he will say: Here am I. If you do away with the yoke of oppression, with the pointing finger and malicious talk, <sup>10</sup> and if you spend yourselves in behalf of the hungry and satisfy the needs of the oppressed, then your light will rise in the darkness, and your night will become like the noonday. <sup>11</sup> Yahweh will guide you always; he will satisfy your needs in a sun-scorched land and will strengthen your frame. You will be like a well-watered garden, like a spring whose waters never fail. <sup>12</sup> Your people will rebuild the ancient ruins and will raise up the age-old foundations; you will be called Repairer of Broken Walls, Restorer of Streets with Dwellings.”-Isaiah 58:6-12

**“Defend the cause of the weak and fatherless; maintain the rights of the poor and oppressed.”**-Psalm 82:3

**“Speak up and judge fairly; defend the rights of the poor and needy.”**-Proverbs 31:9

### Love your physical neighbors/and all other neighbors

**-loving all my physical neighbors by praying for open doors to fearlessly share the good news with them, perfect love drives out fear**

**“Devote yourselves to prayer, being watchful and thankful. <sup>3</sup> And pray for us, too, that God may open a door for our message, so that we may proclaim the mystery of Christ, for which I am in chains. <sup>4</sup> Pray that I may proclaim it clearly, as I should.”**-Colossians 4:2-4

**“And pray in the Spirit on all occasions with all kinds of prayers and requests. With this in mind, be alert and always keep on praying for all the saints. <sup>19</sup> Pray also for me, that whenever I open my mouth, words may be given me so that I will fearlessly make known the mystery of the gospel, <sup>20</sup> for which I am an ambassador in chains. Pray that I may declare it fearlessly, as I should.”**-Ephesians 6:18-20

**“There is no fear in love. But perfect love drives out fear.”**- 1 John 4:18a

**-loving them by being ready to speak to them about God but to do this with gentleness and respect**

**“But in your hearts set Christ apart as holy [and acknowledge Him] as Lord. Always be ready to give a logical defense to anyone who asks you to account for the hope that is in you, but do it courteously and respectfully.**

<sup>16</sup> [And see to it that] your conscience is entirely clear (unimpaired), so that, when you are falsely accused as evildoers, those who threaten you abusively and revile your right behavior in Christ may come to be ashamed [of slandering your good lives].”-1 Peter 3:15-17



## Section 3 (c) – Love your neighbor as Jesus did



### Love your physical neighbors/and all other neighbors (continued)

#### -loving them by sharing my life and God's Word with them

"Jesus said to him, "Today salvation has come to this house, because this man, too, is a son of Abraham. <sup>10</sup> **For the Son of Man came to seek and to save what was lost.**"'-Luke 19:9-10

"As Jesus went on from there, he saw a man named Matthew sitting at the tax collector's booth. "Follow me," he told him, and Matthew got up and followed him. <sup>10</sup> While Jesus was having dinner at Matthew's house, **many tax collectors and "sinners" came and ate with him and his disciples.** <sup>11</sup> When the Pharisees saw this, they asked his disciples, "Why does your teacher eat with tax collectors and 'sinners'?" <sup>12</sup> On hearing this, **Jesus said, "It is not the healthy who need a doctor, but the sick. <sup>13</sup> But go and learn what this means: 'I desire mercy, not sacrifice.' For I have not come to call the righteous, but sinners."**"'-Matthew 9:9-13 and see Hosea 6:6

"**Since, then, we know what it is to fear the Lord, we try to persuade men.** What we are is plain to God, and I hope it is also plain to your conscience. <sup>12</sup> We are not trying to commend ourselves to you again, but are giving you an opportunity to take pride in us, so that you can answer those who take pride in what is seen rather than in what is in the heart. <sup>13</sup> If we are out of our mind, it is for the sake of God; if we are in our right mind, it is for you. <sup>14</sup> For **Christ's love compels us, because we are convinced that one died for all, and therefore all died.** <sup>15</sup> And he died for all, that those who live should no longer live for themselves but for him who died for them and was raised again. <sup>16</sup> **So from now on we regard no one from a worldly point of view.** Though we once regarded Christ in this way, we do so no longer. <sup>17</sup> Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; the old has gone, the new has come! <sup>18</sup> **All this is from God, who reconciled us to himself through Christ and gave us the ministry of reconciliation: <sup>19</sup> that God was reconciling the world to himself in Christ, not counting men's sins against them. And he has committed to us the message of reconciliation. <sup>20</sup> We are therefore Christ's ambassadors, as though God were making his appeal through us. We implore you on Christ's behalf: Be reconciled to God. <sup>21</sup> God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God."**-2 Corinthians 5:11-21

"We loved you so much that we were delighted to share with you **not only the gospel of God but our lives as well,** because you had become so dear to us."-1 Thessalonians 2:8

"**A truthful witness rescues lives,** but one who utters lies is deceitful."- Proverbs 14:25

#### -loving them by NOT foolishly forcing myself upon them knowing that there is a spiritual battle going on

"Seldom set foot in your neighbor's house—too much of you, and he will hate you."-Proverbs 25:17

"If one blesses his neighbor with a loud voice early in the morning, it will be counted as a curse to him."- Proverbs 27:14

"Don't have anything to do with foolish and stupid arguments, because you know they produce quarrels. <sup>24</sup> And **the Lord's servant must not quarrel; instead, he must be kind to everyone, able to teach, not resentful.** <sup>25</sup> Those who oppose him he must gently instruct, in the hope that God will grant them repentance leading them to a knowledge of the truth, <sup>26</sup> and that they will come to their senses and escape from the trap of the devil, who has taken them captive to do his will."-2 Timothy 2:23-26

"For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the powers of this dark world and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms."-Ephesians 6:12





## Section 3 (c) – Love your neighbor as Jesus did



### Love your government officials

#### -love them by praying for them

“Therefore I exhort first of all that **supplications, prayers, intercessions, and giving of thanks** be made for all men, <sup>2</sup> **for kings and all who are in authority, that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and reverence.** <sup>3</sup> For this *is* good and acceptable in the sight of God our Savior, <sup>4</sup> who desires all men to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth.”-1 Timothy 2:1-4

“When a country is rebellious, it has many rulers, but a man of understanding and knowledge maintains order.”  
-Proverbs 28:2

#### -loving them by submitting to them

“**Everyone must submit himself to the governing authorities, for there is no authority except that which God has established.** The authorities that exist have been established by God. <sup>2</sup> Consequently, he who rebels against the authority is rebelling against what God has instituted, and those who do so will bring judgment on themselves. <sup>3</sup> **For rulers hold no terror for those who do right, but for those who do wrong. Do you want to be free from fear of the one in authority? Then do what is right and he will commend you.** <sup>4</sup> For he is God’s servant to do you good. But if you do wrong, be afraid, for he does not bear the sword for nothing. He is God’s servant, an agent of wrath to bring punishment on the wrongdoer. <sup>5</sup> Therefore, it is necessary to submit to the authorities, not only because of possible punishment but also because of conscience. <sup>6</sup> This is also why you pay taxes, for the authorities are God’s servants, who give their full time to governing. <sup>7</sup> **Give everyone what you owe him: If you owe taxes, pay taxes; if revenue, then revenue; if respect, then respect; if honor, then honor.**”-Romans 13:1-5

“**Submit to every human authority because of the Lord, whether to the Emperor as the supreme authority <sup>14</sup> or to governors as those sent out by him to punish those who do what is evil and to praise those who do what is good.** <sup>15</sup> For it is God’s will that you silence the ignorance of foolish people by doing good. <sup>16</sup> As God’s slaves, live as free people, but don’t use your freedom as a way to conceal evil. <sup>17</sup> **Honor everyone. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honor the Emperor.**”-1 Peter 2:13-17

### Love your co-workers

#### -love your co-workers, peers, and all others you come into contact with

##### -daily allowing the light of Christ to shine in my eyes and the overflow of my heart to be the joy of Christ

“But you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people belonging to God, that you may declare the praises of him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light. <sup>10</sup> Once you were not a people, but now you are the people of God; once you had not received mercy, but now you have received mercy. <sup>11</sup> Dear friends, I urge you, as aliens and strangers in the world, to abstain from sinful desires, which war against your soul. <sup>12</sup> **Live such good lives among the pagans that, though they accuse you of doing wrong, they may see your good deeds and glorify God on the day he visits us.**”-1 Peter 2:8-12

“**For the grace of God that brings salvation has appeared to all men. <sup>12</sup> It teaches us to say "No" to ungodliness and worldly passions, and to live self-controlled, upright and godly lives in this present age,** <sup>13</sup> while we wait for the blessed hope—the glorious appearing of our great God and Savior, Jesus Christ, <sup>14</sup> who gave himself for us to redeem us from all wickedness and to purify for himself a people that are his very own, **eager to do what is good.**”-Titus 2:11-13

“**Do everything without complaining or arguing, <sup>15</sup> so that you may become blameless and pure, children of God without fault in a crooked and depraved generation, in which you shine like stars in the universe <sup>16</sup> as you hold out the word of life**”-Philippians 2:14-16



## Section 3 (c) – Love your neighbor as Jesus did



### Love your supervisors/managers/superiors

**-love them by daily submitting to my supervisors/managers/superiors when they ask me/all employees to act in a certain way even when it is not “my way” of doing things. Knowing that God has a greater plan that I can’t see and that He is teaching me to trust in Him and by doing this His teachings will be made attractive.**

**“Obey your leaders and submit to their authority. They keep watch over you as men who must give an account. Obey them so that their work will be a joy, not a burden, for that would be of no advantage to you.”**

**-Hebrews 13:17**

**“Teach slaves to be subject to their masters in everything, to try to please them, not to talk back to them,<sup>10</sup> and not to steal from them, but to show that they can be fully trusted, so that in every way they will make the teaching about God our Savior attractive.”-Titus 2:9-10**

**“Slaves, submit yourselves to your masters with all respect, not only to those who are good and considerate, but also to those who are harsh.<sup>19</sup> For it is commendable if a man bears up under the pain of unjust suffering because he is conscious of God. <sup>20</sup>But how is it to your credit if you receive a beating for doing wrong and endure it? But if you suffer for doing good and you endure it, this is commendable before God. <sup>21</sup>To this you were called, because Christ suffered for you, leaving you an example, that you should follow in his steps.**

**<sup>22</sup> “He committed no sin, and no deceit was found in his mouth.”**

**<sup>23</sup> When they hurled their insults at him, he did not retaliate; when he suffered, he made no threats. Instead, he entrusted himself to him who judges justly. <sup>24</sup>He himself bore our sins in his body on the tree, so that we might die to sins and live for righteousness; by his wounds you have been healed. <sup>25</sup>For you were like sheep going astray, but now you have returned to the Shepherd and Overseer of your souls.”-1 Peter 2:18-25**

**“The king’s heart is like channels of water in the hand of the Lord; He turns it wherever He wishes. <sup>2</sup> Every man’s way is right in his own eyes, but the Lord weighs the hearts.”-Proverbs 21:1-2**

### Love employees and/or those you manage or oversee

**-loving them by treating them well and shepherding them with Jesus**

**“Masters, provide your slaves with what is right and fair, because you know that you also have a Master in heaven.”-Colossians 4:1**

**“Rendering service readily with goodwill, as to the Lord and not to men,<sup>8</sup> knowing that for whatever good anyone does, he will receive his reward from the Lord, whether he is slave or free. <sup>9</sup>You masters, act on the same [principle] toward them and give up threatening and using violent and abusive words, knowing that He Who is both their Master and yours is in heaven, and that there is no respect of persons (no partiality) with Him.”-Ephesians 6:7-9**

**“Be shepherds of God’s flock that is under your care, serving as overseers—not because you must, but because you are willing, as God wants you to be; not greedy for money, but eager to serve;<sup>3</sup> not lording it over those entrusted to you, but being examples to the flock. <sup>4</sup> And when the Chief Shepherd appears, you will receive the crown of glory that will never fade away.”-1 Peter 5:2-4**

**-loving them by lovingly keeping account of them and appropriately correcting them**

**“They keep watch over you as men who must give an account.”-Hebrews 13:17**

**“a man of understanding and knowledge maintains order.”-Proverbs 28:2**

**“Consequently, he who rebels against the authority is rebelling against what God has instituted, and those who do so will bring judgment on themselves. <sup>3</sup> For rulers hold no terror for those who do right, but for those who do wrong.”-Romans 13:2-3**

**-loving them by protecting them from fools**

**“Like an archer who wounds at random is he who hires a fool or any passer-by.”-Proverbs 26:10**



Intentionally Remember – Luke 6:27-28



**“Love your enemies,  
do good to those  
who hate you,  
bless those  
who curse you,  
pray for those  
who mistreat you.”  
-Jesus, Luke 6:27-28**



## Section 3 (d) – Love your enemies as Jesus did

**-by counting there insult a blessing, then blessing them and praying for them**

**“Blessed are you when people insult you, persecute you and falsely say all kinds of evil against you because of me.”** <sup>12</sup> Rejoice and be glad, because great is your reward in heaven, for in the same way they persecuted the prophets who were before you.”-**Jesus**, Matthew 5:10-12

**“You have heard that it was said, ‘Eye for eye, and tooth for tooth.’** <sup>39</sup> But I tell you, Do not resist an evil person. If someone strikes you on the right cheek, turn to him the other also. <sup>40</sup> And if someone wants to sue you and take your tunic, let him have your cloak as well. <sup>41</sup> If someone forces you to go one mile, go with him two miles. <sup>42</sup> Give to the one who asks you, and do not turn away from the one who wants to borrow from you. <sup>43</sup> “You have heard that it was said, ‘Love your neighbor and hate your enemy.’ <sup>44</sup> But I tell you: **Love your enemies and pray for those who persecute you,** <sup>45</sup> **that you may be sons of your Father in heaven. He causes his sun to rise on the evil and the good, and sends rain on the righteous and the unrighteous.** <sup>46</sup> If you love those who love you, what reward will you get? Are not even the tax collectors doing that? <sup>47</sup> And if you greet only your brothers, what are you doing more than others? Do not even pagans do that? <sup>48</sup> **Be perfect, therefore, as your heavenly Father is perfect.”**-**Jesus**, Matthew 5:38-48

**“But I tell you who hear me: Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you,** <sup>28</sup> **bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you.** <sup>29</sup> If someone strikes you on one cheek, turn to him the other also. If someone takes your cloak, do not stop him from taking your tunic. <sup>30</sup> Give to everyone who asks you, and if anyone takes what belongs to you, do not demand it back. <sup>31</sup> Do to others as you would have them do to you. <sup>32</sup> “If you love those who love you, what credit is that to you? Even ‘sinners’ love those who love them. <sup>33</sup> And if you do good to those who are good to you, what credit is that to you? Even ‘sinners’ do that. <sup>34</sup> And if you lend to those from whom you expect repayment, what credit is that to you? Even ‘sinners’ lend to ‘sinners,’ expecting to be repaid in full. <sup>35</sup> But love your enemies, do good to them, and lend to them without expecting to get anything back. Then your reward will be great, and you will be sons of the Most High, because he is kind to the ungrateful and wicked. <sup>36</sup> **Be merciful, just as your Father is merciful.”**-**Jesus**, Luke 6:27-36

**“And when they came to the place which is called The Skull [Latin: Calvary; Hebrew: Golgotha], there they crucified Him, and [along with] the criminals, one on the right and one on the left. <sup>34</sup> And Jesus prayed, Father, forgive them, for they know not what they do.** And they divided His garments *and* distributed them by casting lots for them. <sup>35</sup> Now the people stood by [calmly and leisurely] watching; but the rulers scoffed *and* sneered (turned up their noses) at Him, saying, He rescued others [from death]; let Him now rescue Himself, if He is the Christ (the Messiah) of God, His Chosen One!”- Luke 23:33-35

**“Never return evil for evil or insult for insult (scolding, tongue-lashing, berating), but on the contrary blessing [praying for their welfare, happiness, and protection, and truly pitying and loving them]. For know that to this you have been called, that you may yourselves inherit a blessing [from God—that you may obtain a blessing as heirs, bringing welfare and happiness and protection].**

<sup>10</sup> For let him who wants to enjoy life and see good days [good—whether apparent or not] **keep his tongue free from evil and his lips from guile (treachery, deceit).**

<sup>11</sup> Let him turn away from wickedness *and* shun it, and let him do right. Let him search for peace (harmony; undisturbedness from fears, agitating passions, and moral conflicts) and seek it eagerly. [Do not merely desire peaceful relations with God, with your fellowmen, and with yourself, but pursue, go after them!]

<sup>12</sup> **For the eyes of the Lord are upon the righteous (those who are upright and in right standing with God), and His ears are attentive to their prayer. But the face of the Lord is against those who practice evil [to oppose them, to frustrate, and defeat them].**

<sup>13</sup> Now who is there to hurt you if you are zealous followers of that which is good?

<sup>14</sup> **But even in case you should suffer for the sake of righteousness, [you are] blessed (happy, to be envied). Do not dread or be afraid of their threats, nor be disturbed [by their opposition].**

<sup>15</sup> But in **your hearts set Christ apart as holy [and acknowledge Him] as Lord.** Always be ready to give a logical defense to anyone who asks you to account for the hope that is in you, but do it courteously and respectfully.”

-1 Peter 3:9-15



## Section 3 (d) – Love your enemies as Jesus did

### **-by not taking revenge but instead feeding my enemy if my enemy is hungry, etc.**

"If your enemy is hungry, give him food to eat; if he is thirsty, give him water to drink." – Proverbs 25:21

"Do not take revenge, my friends, but leave room for God's wrath, for it is written: "It is mine to avenge; I will repay," says the Lord. <sup>20</sup> On the contrary: "If your enemy is hungry, feed him; if he is thirsty, give him something to drink. In doing this, you will heap burning coals on his head." <sup>21</sup> **Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good.**" – Romans 12:19-21

### **-by forgiving from the heart and not clinging to bitterness, blame, etc. and resolving conflict biblically<sup>18</sup>**

"If your brother sins against you, go and show him his fault, just between the two of you. If he listens to you, you have won your brother over. <sup>16</sup> But if he will not listen, take one or two others along, so that 'every matter may be established by the testimony of two or three witnesses.' <sup>17</sup> If he refuses to listen to them, tell it to the church; and if he refuses to listen even to the church, treat him as you would a pagan or a tax collector.

<sup>18</sup> "I tell you the truth, whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven.

<sup>19</sup> "Again, I tell you that if two of you on earth agree about anything you ask for, it will be done for you by my Father in heaven. <sup>20</sup> For where two or three come together in my name, there am I with them."

<sup>21</sup> Then Peter came to Jesus and asked, "Lord, how many times shall I forgive my brother when he sins against me? Up to seven times?"

<sup>22</sup> Jesus answered, "I tell you, not seven times, but seventy-seven times.

<sup>23</sup> "Therefore, the kingdom of heaven is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants. <sup>24</sup> As he began the settlement, a man who owed him ten thousand talents was brought to him. <sup>25</sup> Since he was not able to pay, the master ordered that he and his wife and his children and all that he had be sold to repay the debt.

<sup>26</sup> "The servant fell on his knees before him. 'Be patient with me,' he begged, 'and I will pay back everything.' <sup>27</sup> The servant's master took pity on him, canceled the debt and let him go.

<sup>28</sup> "But when that servant went out, he found one of his fellow servants who owed him a hundred denarii. He grabbed him and began to choke him. 'Pay back what you owe me!' he demanded.

<sup>29</sup> "His fellow servant fell to his knees and begged him, 'Be patient with me, and I will pay you back.'

<sup>30</sup> "But he refused. Instead, he went off and had the man thrown into prison until he could pay the debt. <sup>31</sup> When the other servants saw what had happened, they were greatly distressed and went and told their master everything that had happened.

<sup>32</sup> "Then the master called the servant in. 'You wicked servant,' he said, 'I canceled all that debt of yours because you begged me to. <sup>33</sup> Shouldn't you have had mercy on your fellow servant just as I had on you?' <sup>34</sup> In anger his master turned him over to the jailers to be tortured, until he should pay back all he owed.

<sup>35</sup> **"This is how my heavenly Father will treat each of you unless you forgive your brother from your heart."** – Matthew 18:15-35

### **-by watching out for false prophets who bear the fruit of this world**

"Watch out for false prophets. They come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ferocious wolves. <sup>16</sup> By their fruit you will recognize them. Do people pick grapes from thornbushes, or figs from thistles? <sup>17</sup> Likewise every good tree bears good fruit, but a bad tree bears bad fruit. <sup>18</sup> A good tree cannot bear bad fruit, and a bad tree cannot bear good fruit. <sup>19</sup> Every tree that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire. <sup>20</sup> Thus, **by their fruit you will recognize them.**" – Jesus, Matthew 7:15-20

"But if you harbor **bitter envy** and **selfish ambition** in your hearts, do not boast about it or deny the truth. <sup>15</sup> **Such "wisdom" does not come down from heaven but is earthly, unspiritual, of the devil.** <sup>16</sup> **For where you have envy and selfish ambition, there you find disorder and every evil practice.**" – James 3:14-16

<sup>18</sup> See the section entitled "How to Resolve Conflict Biblically" in this plan.



## Section 3 (d) – Love your enemies as Jesus did

### **-if in a position of authority, then I am to love my enemies by bearing the sword to protect and punish**

“For rulers hold no terror for those who do right, but for those who do wrong. Do you want to be free from fear of the one in authority? Then do what is right and he will commend you. <sup>4</sup> For he is God’s servant to do you good. But **if you do wrong, be afraid, for he does not bear the sword for nothing. He is God’s servant, an agent of wrath to bring punishment on the wrongdoer.**”-Romans 13:3-4

### **-trusting in God that He will bring everything into account and will give perfect justice in the end**

“But how is it to your credit if you receive a beating for doing wrong and endure it? But if you suffer for doing good and you endure it, this is commendable before God. <sup>21</sup> To this you were called, because Christ suffered for you, leaving you an example, that you should follow in his steps. <sup>22</sup> “He committed no sin, and no deceit was found in his mouth.” <sup>23</sup> **When they hurled their insults at him, he did not retaliate; when he suffered, he made no threats. Instead, he entrusted himself to him who judges justly.**” -1 Peter 2:20-24

“But I tell you that men **will have to give account on the day of judgment for every careless word they have spoken.** <sup>37</sup> For by your words you will be acquitted, and by your words you will be condemned.”-Jesus, Matthew 12:36-37

“They think it strange that you do not plunge with them into the same flood of dissipation, and they heap abuse on you. <sup>5</sup> But **they will have to give account to him who is ready to judge the living and the dead.**”-1 Peter 4:4-5

**“Nothing in all creation is hidden from God’s sight. Everything is uncovered and laid bare before the eyes of him to whom we must give account.”**-Hebrews 4:13

“In the past God overlooked such ignorance, but now he commands all people everywhere to repent. **For he has set a day when he will judge the world with justice by the man he has appointed. He has given proof of this to all men by raising him from the dead.**”-Acts 17:30-31





Intentionally Remember – John 14:15-17



**“<sup>15</sup> If you love Me,  
you will keep My commandments.  
<sup>16</sup> And I will ask the Father,  
and He will give you another  
Counselor [the Holy Spirit] to be  
with you forever. <sup>17</sup> He is the Spirit  
of Truth. The world is unable to  
receive Him because it doesn’t see  
Him or know Him. But you do know  
Him, because He remains with you  
and will be in you.”  
-Jesus, John 14:15-17**



## Section 3 (e) – Love as Jesus by obeying God’s Word



### **How to obey God’s Word with the Holy Spirit:**

#### **Pray for your eyes and mind to be opened by God.**

“Open my eyes, that I may see wondrous things from Your instruction.”

- Psalm 119:18

Then Jesus told them, “These are My words that I spoke to you while I was still with you . . .” Then He opened their minds to understand the Scriptures. He also said to them, “This is what is written: The Christ would suffer and rise from the dead the third day, and repentance for forgiveness of sins would be proclaimed in His name to all the nations, beginning at Jerusalem.” - Luke 24:44-47

#### **Read the inspired Word of God with the Holy Spirit.**

“They read out of the book of instruction of God, translating to give the sense so that the people could understand what was read.” - Nehemiah 8:8

#### **Examine, with the Holy Spirit, the text of Scripture to find the meaning (the intention expressed in the words in the text) put there by Holy Spirit and use the rest of Scripture to interpret it.**

“They received the word with great eagerness, examining the Scriptures daily to see whether these things were so.” - Acts 17:11

“Be diligent to present yourself approved to God as a workman who does not need to be ashamed, accurately handling the Word of Truth.” - 2 Tim 2:15

#### **Pay attention to the Scriptures for they are the very Words of God.**

“We have the prophetic Word strongly confirmed. You will do well to pay attention to it, as to a lamp shining in a dismal place, until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your hearts.” - 2 Peter 1:19

“For Ezra had prepared his heart to seek the instruction of the LORD, and to do it, and to teach His statutes and ordinances” - Ezra 7:10

#### **Submit to the Holy Spirit sanctifying you [spiritually washing you] by the Word of God.**

“That is why Scripture says: ‘God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.’ Submit yourselves, then, to God.” - James 4:6-7

“Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth; Your Word is Truth.” - Jesus, John 17:17



## Section 3 (e) – Love as Jesus by obeying God’s Word

“For the one whom God has sent speaks the Words of God, for **God gives the Spirit without limit.**”

-Jesus, John 3:34

“Not by might nor by power, **but by my Spirit,**” says Yahweh Almighty.”

-Zechariah 4:6

### Spirit Filled

#### We are to be in fellowship with the Holy Spirit

“On the last and greatest day of the Feast, Jesus stood and said in a loud voice, **“If anyone is thirsty, let him come to me and drink. Whoever believes in me, as the Scripture has said, streams of living water will flow from within him.” By this he meant the Spirit.**”-John 7:37-39

“But when he, the Spirit of truth, comes, he will guide you into all truth. **He will not speak on his own; he will speak only what he hears, and he will tell you what is yet to come.**”-Jesus, John 16:13

“But I tell you the truth: It is for your good that I am going away. Unless I go away, **the Counselor** will not come to you; but if I go, I will send him to you. <sup>8</sup> When he comes, **he will convict the world of guilt in regard to sin and righteousness and judgment:** <sup>9</sup> in regard to sin, because men do not believe in me”-Jesus, John 16:7-9

**“The Spirit and the bride say, “Come!” And let him who hears say, “Come!” Whoever is thirsty, let him come; and whoever wishes, let him take the free gift of the water of life.”**- Revelation 22:17

“If there is **any fellowship of the Spirit**”-Philippians 2:1

“May the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and **the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with you all.**”-2 Corinthians 13:14

#### We are to live by the Holy Spirit

**“It is the Spirit who gives life; the flesh profits nothing; the words that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life.”**-Jesus, John 6:63

“It is these who cause divisions, **worldly people, devoid of the Spirit.** <sup>20</sup> But you, beloved, building yourselves up in your most holy faith and **praying in the Holy Spirit**”-Jude 1:19-20

“Flee from sexual immorality. All other sins a man commits are outside his body, but he who sins sexually sins against his own body. <sup>19</sup> Do you not know that **your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, who is in you, whom you have received from God? You are not your own; <sup>20</sup> you were bought at a price. Therefore honor God with your body.**”-1 Corinthians 6:18-20

“You, my brothers, **were called to be free.** But do not use your freedom to indulge the sinful nature; rather, serve one another in love. <sup>14</sup> The entire law is summed up in a single command: “Love your neighbor as yourself.” <sup>15</sup> If you keep on biting and devouring each other, watch out or you will be destroyed by each other. <sup>16</sup> So I say, **live by the Spirit, and you will not gratify the desires of the sinful nature.** <sup>17</sup> For the sinful nature desires what is contrary to the Spirit, and the Spirit what is contrary to the sinful nature. They are in conflict with each other, so that you do not do what you want. <sup>18</sup> But if you are **led by the Spirit, you are not under law.** <sup>19</sup> The acts of the sinful nature are obvious: sexual immorality, impurity and debauchery; <sup>20</sup> idolatry and witchcraft; hatred, discord, jealousy, fits of rage, selfish ambition, dissensions, factions <sup>21</sup> and envy; drunkenness, orgies, and the like. I warn you, as I did before, that those who live like this will not inherit the kingdom of God. <sup>22</sup> But **the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, <sup>23</sup> gentleness and self-control.** Against such things there is no law. <sup>24</sup> Those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the sinful nature with its passions and desires. <sup>25</sup> Since **we live by the Spirit,** let us keep in step with the Spirit. <sup>26</sup> Let us not become conceited, provoking and envying each other.”-Galatians 5:13-26

“We do, however, speak a message of wisdom among the mature, but not the wisdom of this age or of the rulers of this age, who are coming to nothing. <sup>7</sup> No, we speak of God’s secret wisdom, a wisdom that has been hidden and that God destined for our glory before time began. <sup>8</sup> None of the rulers of this age understood it, for if they had, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory. <sup>9</sup> However, as it is written:

**“No eye has seen, no ear has heard, no mind has conceived what God has prepared for those who love him” — <sup>10</sup> but God has revealed it to us by his Spirit. The Spirit searches all things, even the deep things of God.**



## Section 3 (e) – Love as Jesus by obeying God’s Word



### Spirit Filled (continued)

#### We are to live by the Holy Spirit (continued)

<sup>11</sup> For who among men knows the thoughts of a man except the man’s spirit within him? In the same way **no one knows the thoughts of God except the Spirit of God.** <sup>12</sup> We have not received the spirit of the world **but the Spirit who is from God, that we may understand what God has freely given us.** <sup>13</sup> This is what we speak, not in words taught us by human wisdom **but in words taught by the Spirit**, expressing spiritual truths in spiritual words. <sup>14</sup> **The man without the Spirit does not accept the things that come from the Spirit of God, for they are foolishness to him, and he cannot understand them, because they are spiritually discerned.** <sup>15</sup> The spiritual man makes judgments about all things, but he himself is not subject to any man’s judgment: <sup>16</sup> “For who has known the mind of the Lord that he may instruct him?” **But we have the mind of Christ.**”-1 Corinthians 2:6-16  
“By the Holy Spirit who dwells within us, guard the good deposit entrusted to you.”-2 Timothy 1:14  
“If you are reviled for the name of Christ, you are blessed, because the Spirit of glory and of God rests on you.”- 1 Peter 4:14

#### We are to be full of the Holy Spirit

“Then Jesus returned from the Jordan, **full of the Holy Spirit**, and was led by the Spirit in the wilderness.”  
-Luke 4:1

“Then a shoot will spring from the stem of Jesse, and a branch from his roots will bear fruit. <sup>2</sup> **The Spirit of Yahweh will rest on Him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and strength, the spirit of knowledge and the fear of Yahweh.** <sup>3</sup> And He will delight in the fear of Yahweh, and He will not judge by what His eyes see, nor make a decision by what His ears hear; <sup>4</sup> but with righteousness He will judge the poor, and decide with fairness for the afflicted of the earth; and He will strike the earth with the rod of His mouth, and with the breath of His lips He will slay the wicked. <sup>5</sup> Also righteousness will be the belt about His loins, and faithfulness the belt about His waist.”-Isaiah 11:1-5

“Brothers, choose seven men from among you who are **known to be full of the Spirit** and wisdom.”-Acts 6:3

“So they chose Stephen, a man **full of faith and the Holy Spirit**, and Philip, Prochorus, Nicanor, Timon, Parmenas, and Nicolaus, a proselyte from Antioch.”- Acts 6:5b

“for he was a good man, **full of the Holy Spirit** and of faith. And large numbers of people were added to the Lord.”-Acts 11:24

“**be filled with the Spirit**”-Ephesians 5:18

#### We are to be Led by the Holy Spirit

“Then Jesus returned from the Jordan, full of the Holy Spirit, and **was led by the Spirit** in the wilderness.”  
-Luke 4:1

“Since we live by the Spirit, **let us keep in step with the Spirit.**”-Galatians 5:25

#### The Word and The Spirit

“**It is the Spirit who gives life; the flesh profits nothing;** the rhema [Holy Spirit quickened Word] that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life.”-Jesus, John 6:63

“For with God nothing is ever impossible and no rhēma [Holy Spirit quickened Word] from God shall be without power or impossible of fulfillment.”-Luke 1:37



## Section 3 (e) – Love as Jesus by obeying God’s Word

### Spirit Filled (continued)

**We are able to experience the power of the Holy Spirit - this power can be experienced in our whole being**

“And He went off with him; and a large crowd was following Him and pressing in on Him. <sup>25</sup> A woman who had had a hemorrhage for twelve years, <sup>26</sup> and had endured much at the hands of many physicians, and had spent all that she had and was not helped at all, but rather had grown worse— <sup>27</sup> **after hearing about Jesus, she came up in the crowd behind Him and touched His cloak.** <sup>28</sup> For she thought, “If I just touch His garments, I will get well.” <sup>29</sup> **Immediately the flow of her blood was dried up; and she felt in her body that she was healed of her affliction.** <sup>30</sup> And immediately Jesus having known in himself that out of him power had gone forth, turned around in the crowd and said, “Who touched My garments?” <sup>31</sup> And His disciples said to Him, “You see the crowd pressing in on You, and You say, ‘Who touched Me?’” <sup>32</sup> And He looked around to see the woman who had done this. <sup>33</sup> But the woman fearing and trembling, aware of what had happened to her, came and fell down before Him and told Him the whole truth. <sup>34</sup> And He said to her, “Daughter, your faith has made you well; go in peace and be healed of your affliction.”-Mark 5:24-34

“For this reason, ever since I heard about your faith in the Lord Jesus and your love for all the saints, <sup>16</sup> I have not stopped giving thanks for you, remembering you in my prayers. <sup>17</sup> I keep asking that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the glorious Father, **may give you the Spirit of wisdom and revelation, so that you may know him better.** <sup>18</sup> I pray also that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened in order that **you may know** the hope to which he has called you, the riches of his glorious inheritance in the saints, <sup>19</sup> and **his incomparably great power for us who believe. That power is like the working of his mighty strength,** <sup>20</sup> **which he exerted in Christ when he raised him from the dead** and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly realms, <sup>21</sup> far above all rule and authority, power and dominion, and every title that can be given, not only in the present age but also in the one to come. <sup>22</sup> And God placed all things under his feet and appointed him to be head over everything for the church, <sup>23</sup> which is his body, the fullness of him who fills everything in every way.”-Ephesians 1:15-23

“For this reason I kneel before the Father, <sup>15</sup> from whom his whole family in heaven and on earth derives its name. <sup>16</sup> I pray that out of his glorious riches **he may strengthen you with power through his Spirit in your inner being,** <sup>17</sup> so that Christ may dwell in your hearts through faith. And I pray that you, being rooted and established in love, <sup>18</sup> **may have power,** together with all the saints, to grasp how wide and long and high and deep is the love of Christ, <sup>19</sup> and to know this love that surpasses knowledge —that you may be filled to the measure of all the fullness of God. <sup>20</sup> Now to him who is able to do immeasurably more than all we ask or imagine, **according to his power that is at work within us,** <sup>21</sup> to him be glory in the church and in Christ Jesus throughout all generations, for ever and ever! Amen.”-Ephesians 3:14-21

“May the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace as you trust in him, so that you may overflow with hope by **the power of the Holy Spirit.**”-Romans 15:13

“For we know, brothers loved by God, that he has chosen you, <sup>5</sup> because **our gospel came to you not only in word, but also in power and in the Holy Spirit and with full conviction.** You know what kind of men we proved to be among you for your sake. <sup>6</sup> And you became imitators of us and of the Lord, for you received the word in much affliction, **with the joy of the Holy Spirit,** <sup>7</sup> so that you became an example to all the believers in Macedonia and in Achaia.”-1 Thessalonians 1:4-7



## Section 3 (e) – Love as Jesus by obeying God’s Word

### The Importance of obeying God’s Word

“As Jesus was saying these things, a woman in the crowd called out, “Blessed is the mother who gave you birth and nursed you.” <sup>28</sup> He replied, “**Blessed rather are those who hear the word of God and obey it.**”-Luke 11:27-28

“**Why do you call me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ and do not do what I say?** <sup>47</sup> I will show you what he is like **who comes to me and hears my words and puts them into practice.** <sup>48</sup> He is like a man building a house, who dug down deep and laid the foundation on rock. When a flood came, the torrent struck that house but could not shake it, because it was well built. <sup>49</sup> But the one who hears my words and does not put them into practice is like a man who built a house on the ground without a foundation. The moment the torrent struck that house, it collapsed and its destruction was complete.”-Jesus, Luke 6:46-49

“As the Father has loved me, so have I loved you. Now remain in my love. <sup>10</sup> If **you obey my commands**, you will remain in my love, **just as I have obeyed** my Father’s commands and remain in his love. <sup>11</sup> I have told you this so that my joy may be in you and that your joy may be complete. <sup>12</sup> **My command is this: Love each other as I have loved you.** <sup>13</sup> Greater love has no one than this, that he lay down his life for his friends.”-Jesus, John 15:9-13

“He humbled Himself **by becoming obedient to the point of death— even to death on a cross.**”-Philippians 2:8

“Dear friends, if our hearts do not condemn us, we have confidence before God <sup>22</sup> and receive from him anything we ask, **because we obey his commands and do what pleases him.** <sup>23</sup> **And this is his command: to believe in the name of his Son, Jesus Christ, and to love one another as he commanded us.** <sup>24</sup> **Those who obey his commands live in him, and he in them. And this is how we know that he lives in us: We know it by the Spirit he gave us . . . This is how we know that we love the children of God: by loving God and carrying out his commands.** <sup>3</sup> **This is love for God: to obey his commands. And his commands are not burdensome,** <sup>4</sup> **for everyone born of God overcomes the world.** This is the victory that has overcome the world, even our faith.”-1 John 3:21-24, 5:2-4

“Now that **you have purified yourselves by obeying the truth** so that you have sincere love for your brothers, love one another deeply, from the heart”-1 Peter 1:22

“I will surely bless you and make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky and as the sand on the seashore. Your descendants will take possession of the cities of their enemies, <sup>18</sup> and through your offspring all nations on earth will be blessed, **because you have obeyed me.**”-Genesis 22:17-19

“As a father has compassion on his children, so Yahweh has compassion on those who fear him;

<sup>14</sup> for he knows how we are formed, he remembers that we are dust.

<sup>15</sup> As for man, his days are like grass, he flourishes like a flower of the field;

<sup>16</sup> the wind blows over it and it is gone, and its place remembers it no more.

<sup>17</sup> But from everlasting to everlasting Yahweh’s love is with those who fear him, and his righteousness with their children’s children— <sup>18</sup> with those who keep his covenant and **remember to obey his precepts.**”

-Psalm 103:13-18

“Great peace have they who love your law, and nothing can make them stumble. <sup>166</sup> I wait for your salvation, O Yahweh, and I follow your commands. <sup>167</sup> **I obey** your statutes, for I love them greatly. <sup>168</sup> **I obey** your precepts and your statutes, for all my ways are known to you.”-Psalm 119:165-168

“Remember, therefore, what you have received and heard; **obey it**, and repent.”-Revelation 3:3

“This calls for patient endurance on the part of the saints **who obey God’s commandments** and remain faithful to Jesus.”-Revelation 14:12





## Section 3 (e) – Love as Jesus by obeying God’s Word

### Living out God’s Word so that you can love God and others as Jesus did

#### God has given me His Spirit and therefore made it possible to live out His Words

“But **whoever lives by the truth comes into the light**, so that it may be seen plainly that **what he has done has been done through God**.”-Jesus, John 3:21

“**It is the Spirit who gives life; the flesh profits nothing; the words that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life**.”-Jesus, John 6:63

“**If you remain in me and my words remain in you**, ask whatever you wish, and it will be given you. <sup>8</sup> This is to my Father’s glory, that you bear much fruit, showing yourselves to be my disciples.”-Jesus, John 15:7-8

“I am a king. For this I have been born, and for this I have come into the world, to testify to the truth. **Everyone who is of the truth hears My voice**.”-Jesus, John 18:37

“For **with God nothing is ever impossible and no word [rhema] from God shall be without power or impossible of fulfillment**.”-Luke 1:37

#### God has given me everything I need to live a godly life and to fulfill His purpose through His Spirit and His Word

“**His divine power has given us everything required for life and godliness** through the knowledge of Him who called us by His own glory and goodness. <sup>4</sup> By these He has given us **very great and precious promises**, so that through them you may share in the divine nature, escaping the corruption that is in the world because of evil desires.”-2 Peter 1:3-4

#### God has given us victory in Spiritual Warfare and calls us to stand together with Him. Therefore, we can rebuke the Lies of the Enemy

“The weapons we fight with are not the weapons of the world. On the contrary, they have divine power to demolish strongholds. <sup>5</sup> We demolish arguments and every pretension that sets itself up against the knowledge of God, and **we take captive every thought to make it obedient to Christ**. <sup>6</sup> And we will be ready to punish every act of disobedience, once your obedience is complete.”-2 Corinthians 10:4-6

“Finally, **be strong in the Lord and in his mighty power**. <sup>11</sup> Put on the full armor of God so that you can take your stand against the devil’s schemes. <sup>12</sup> For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the powers of this dark world and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms. <sup>13</sup> Therefore put on the full armor of God, so that when the day of evil comes, you may be able to stand your ground, and after you have done everything, to stand. <sup>14</sup> Stand firm then, with the belt of truth buckled around your waist, with the breastplate of righteousness in place, <sup>15</sup> and with your feet fitted with the readiness that comes from the gospel of peace. <sup>16</sup> In addition to all this, take up the shield of faith, with which you can extinguish all the flaming arrows of the evil one. <sup>17</sup> Take the helmet of salvation and **the sword of the Spirit, which is the word [rhema] of God**.”-Ephesians 6:10-17

#### God has given me everything needed to through His Spirit and His Word to rejoice (give Him the glory)

“The apostles left the Sanhedrin, **rejoicing because they had been counted worthy of suffering disgrace for the Name**.”-Acts 5:41

“All this is evidence that God’s judgment is right, and as a result you will be counted worthy of **the kingdom of God, for which you are suffering**.”-2 Thessalonians 1:5

“In fact, **everyone who wants to live a godly life in Christ Jesus will be persecuted**”-2 Timothy 3:12



## Section 3 (e) – Love as Jesus by obeying God’s Word

### Living out God’s Word so that you can love God and others as Jesus did (continued)

#### God has given me everything needed through His Spirit and His Word to persevere to the end

“Therefore, since we are surrounded by such a great cloud of witnesses, let us throw off everything that hinders and the sin that so easily entangles, and **let us run with perseverance the race marked out for us.** <sup>2</sup> **Let us fix our eyes on Jesus**, the author and perfecter of our faith, **who for the joy set before him endured the cross**, scorning its shame, and sat down at the right hand of the throne of God. <sup>3</sup> **Consider him who endured such opposition from sinful men, so that you will not grow weary and lose heart.**”

-Hebrews 12:1-3

“His master replied, ‘**Well done, good and faithful servant!** You have been faithful with a few things; I will put you in charge of many things. **Come and share your master’s happiness!**’-Jesus, Matthew 25:21

<sup>46</sup> “Why do you call Me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ and do not do what I say? <sup>47</sup> **Everyone who comes to Me and hears My words and acts on them, I will show you whom he is like:** <sup>48</sup> **he is like a man building a house, who dug deep and laid a foundation on the rock; and when a flood occurred, the torrent burst against that house and could not shake it, because it had been well built.** <sup>49</sup> But the one who has heard and has not acted accordingly, is like a man who built a house on the ground without any foundation; and the torrent burst against it and immediately it collapsed, and the ruin of that house was great.”-Luke 6:46-49

#### God has given me the growing instructions through His Word to know His Ways and to eagerly look forward to His return

“Thomas said to him, “Lord, we don’t know where you are going, so how can we know the way?” <sup>6</sup> **Jesus answered, “I am the way and the truth and the life.** No one comes to the Father except through me.”

-John 14:5-6

“**The Spirit and the bride say, “Come!”** And let him who hears say, “Come!” Whoever is thirsty, let him come; and whoever wishes, let him take the free gift of the water of life.”-Revelation 22:7

**There is so much more to God’s plan  
then what is contained  
in this limited document.**

**Therefore, deepen your relationship  
with God by soaking in God’s Word  
and then live it out  
by the power of the Holy Spirit.**

## What is the Christian life about?

***It is only through Jesus Christ! Jesus' Method. Jesus' Motivation. Jesus' Mission.***



Feeding  
Trough,  
Cross,  
Empty  
Tomb,  
Crown,  
Only  
Way

**It is only through Jesus Christ! He is both fully God and the perfect human. Jesus Christ is *The Good News* - The Savior King - born of a virgin, died for our sins on the cross, buried in a tomb, and resurrected on the third day.**

***"The time has come," Jesus said.***

***"The kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the good news!" - Mark 1:15***

***"I am The Way and The Truth, and The Life;  
no one comes to the Father but through Me."***

***- Jesus, John 14:6***



Yoke,  
Clean  
Water

### **Jesus' Method:**

**Come to Jesus. Be Yoked to Jesus. Learn from Jesus through God's Word.**

***"Come to Me,***

***all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest.***

***Take My Yoke upon you  
and***

***Learn from Me,***

***for I am gentle and humble in heart,  
and you will find rest for your souls.***

***For My Yoke is easy and My burden is light."***

***- Jesus, Matthew 11:28-30***

***"Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth; Your Word is Truth." - Jesus, John 17:17***



Compass

### **Jesus' Motivation:**

**Love the LORD and others as Jesus did.**

(a) Love the LORD: "Love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength." - Jesus, Mark 12:30

(b) Love the Church: "Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another. By this all men will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another." - Jesus, John 13:34-35

(c) Love your neighbor: "Love your neighbor as yourself." - Jesus, Matthew 22:39

(d) Love your enemies: "Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you." - Jesus, Luke 6:27-28

(e) By obeying God's Word: "If you love Me, you will keep My commandments. And I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Counselor [the Holy Spirit] to be with you forever. He is the Spirit of Truth. The world is unable to receive Him because it doesn't see Him or know Him. But you do know Him, because He remains with you and will be in you." - Jesus, John 14:15-17



Lifebuoy

### **Jesus' Mission:**

**Make disciples of Jesus that make disciples of Jesus  
(in the home, in the church, and in the world).**

***"All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.***

***Go, therefore, make disciples from all the nations,***

***[note: the first step in making disciples is sharing the good news]***

***baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,***

***teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.***

***And behold, I am with you always, to the very end of the age."***

***- Jesus, Matthew 28:18-20***



**Intentionally Remember – Matthew 28:18-20**

**“All authority in heaven and on earth  
has been given to me.  
Go, therefore, make disciples  
from all the nations,  
baptizing them  
in the name  
of the Father and of the Son  
and of the Holy Spirit,  
teaching them to obey everything  
I have commanded you.  
And behold, I am with you always,  
to the very end of the age.”  
-Jesus, Matthew 28:18-20**



## Section 4 – Jesus Mission

# A Theology of Jesus Christ's Great Commission

Matthew 28:18-20

### I. The Declaration

**All authority**

*in heaven and on earth has been given to me.*

[Jesus Christ is the omnipotent (all-powerful) God and King of the universe (Rev. 4:8; Phil. 2:6-11; Dan. 7:14)]

### II. The Exhortation

Go, therefore,

(A) **make disciples** *from all the nations,*

[IMPERATIVE COMMAND – MEANING: DO THIS!]

[Note: the first step in making disciples is sharing the good news about Jesus Christ the Savior King (See Mk. 1:15; Mt. 4:17, 10:7, 11:28-30; Jn. 3:16-21; 1 Cor. 15:3-4; Rm. 1:2-4, 3:23, 6:23, 10:9-11; Eph. 2:8-9; Acts 17:24-31; Gal. 2:16; Tit. 3:3-7)]

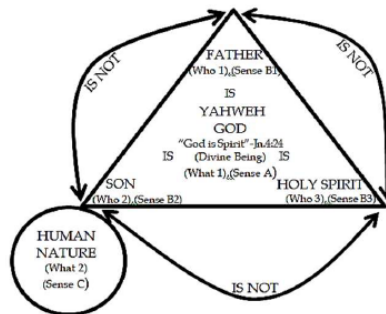
[What is a disciple of Jesus Christ? In Matthew 4:19 Jesus Christ states:

"Come, follow me, and I will make you fishers of people."

1. *Come, follow me* – A disciple of Jesus Christ the Savior King is one who has *repented of their sins and trusted in Jesus Christ alone as their Lord (God) and Savior*. Christ is the only Master Leader and Master Teacher whom they follow (Mt. 16:24-26; 23:8-12).

2. *I will make you fishers of people* – A disciple of Jesus Christ while being transformed by Jesus Christ is on mission with Jesus Christ to make disciples of Jesus Christ who make disciples of Jesus Christ (in the home, in the church, and in the world).]

(B) **baptizing** [IMMERSING IN WATER] **them** [DISCIPLES OF JESUS CHRIST]  
*into the name* [SINGULAR NOT PLURAL, ONLY ONE GOD (Is. 42:8, 43:10-13, 45:5)]



*of the Father* [WHO 1]

*of the Son* [WHO 2] and

*of the Holy Spirit* [WHO 3]

[Yahweh God is One God that is Three Persons (The Trinity). In an analogous way, a triangle is one three-sided shape that is three points and this is not a contradiction. Therefore, the purpose of this diagram is simply and only to show that it is NOT a contradiction that Yahweh God is One What and is Three Persons. Plus, the Son added a Human Nature (NOT the subtraction of God). These are NOT contradictions. (Dt. 6:4; Rm. 1:1-5; 2 Cor. 13:14; Jn. 1:1-18; Jn. 14:17; Eph. 3:14-21, Ph. 2:6-11)]

(C) **teaching** [INTENTIONALLY TRAINING] **them** [DISCIPLES OF JESUS CHRIST]

*to obey* [Lk. 11:28; Mt. 7:24-27; Jn. 15:9-13; 1 Jn. 3:21-24, 5:2-4; 1 Pt. 1:22; Rm. 16:25-27]

*everything* [Mt. 5-7; Mt. 24:35; Jn. 14:6, 17:17; Col. 2:3; 2 Pt. 1:3-4, 20-21; 2 Tim. 3:16-18]

*I have commanded you.* [Mk. 12:30; Jn. 13:34; Mt. 22:39; Lk. 6:27; Jn. 14:15]

### III. The Promise

And **behold** [IMPERATIVE COMMAND – MEANING: DO THIS!]

***I am with you always, to the very end of the age.***

[Yahweh God is the personally caring omnipresent (always present) God (Rev. 4:11; Ex. 3:1-20)]

[Note: in most English translations LORD, with all caps stands, for the Hebrew name Yahweh]





# **God is with us in Jesus Christ the Savior King**

Jesus Christ was called Immanuel  
because this title means God is with us:  
**"The virgin will conceive and give birth to a son,  
and they will call Him  
'Immanuel' (which means 'God with us')."**  
- Matthew 1:23

The name Jesus means Yahweh Saves:  
**"She will bear a Son; and you shall call His name Jesus,  
for He will save His people from their sins."**  
- Matthew 1:21

Jesus is The Christ which means  
The Anointed One/The Messiah (The Savior)  
that is predicted throughout The Scriptures:  
**"An account of the genealogy  
of Jesus Christ"**  
- Matthew 1:1





## Section 4 – Jesus Mission



Jesus Christ declared that He was God, The King,  
and that Kingdom of God was present in Him:

**Jesus began to preach, saying,  
“Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.”  
-Matthew 4:17**

**“When the Son of Man [see Matthew 26:63-64 and Daniel 7:13-14]  
comes in His glory, and all the angels with Him, then He will  
sit on His glorious throne.<sup>32</sup> All the nations will be gathered  
before Him, and He will separate the people one from  
another as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats;  
<sup>33</sup> and He will place the sheep on his right, and the goats on  
the left. <sup>34</sup> Then the King will say to those on His right, ‘Come,  
you who are blessed by my Father; inherit the kingdom  
prepared for you from the foundation of the world.’”**

**- Jesus Christ, Matthew 25:31-34**

Therefore, Jesus Christ is  
the omnipotent (all powerful) Savior King  
and He therefore has all authority:

**“All authority in heaven and on earth  
has been given to me.**

**Go, therefore, make disciples  
[IMPERATIVE COMMAND – MEANING: DO THIS!]  
from all the nations”**

**-Jesus, Matthew 28:18-20**



## Section 4 – Jesus Mission



Furthermore, because Jesus Christ is fully God,  
He will never leave us:

**“He has said, ‘I will never leave you nor forsake you.’  
So we can confidently say,  
‘The LORD is my helper;  
I will not fear; what can man do to me?’”  
- Hebrews 13:5-6**

**“My sheep hear My voice, and I know them,  
and they follow Me;  
and I give eternal life to them,  
and they shall never perish;  
and no one shall snatch them out of My hand.”  
- Jesus Christ, John 10:27-28**

Therefore, He can command us to *behold* the fact  
that He is omnipresent (always present):  
**“And behold [IMPERATIVE COMMAND – MEANING: DO THIS!]  
I am with you always, to the very end of the age.”  
- Jesus Christ, Matthew 28:20**

Jesus Christ, who is fully God, declares  
at the beginning of The Great Commission  
that He is omnipotent (all powerful)  
and at the end that He is omnipresent (always present)!



## Section 4 – Jesus Mission

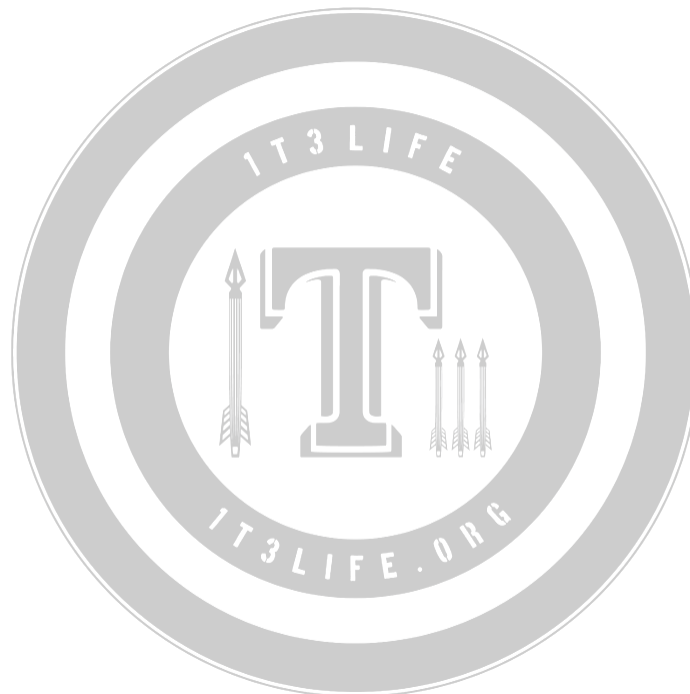
For a more in-depth understanding of  
how amazing Jesus Christ is,  
see these two earlier sections  
in this handout:

**Section 1.2 – It is only through Jesus Christ! – John 14:6**  
and

**Section 3 (a) – Love the LORD.**

*A Christian Discipleship Atlas*

From  
1T3Life.org



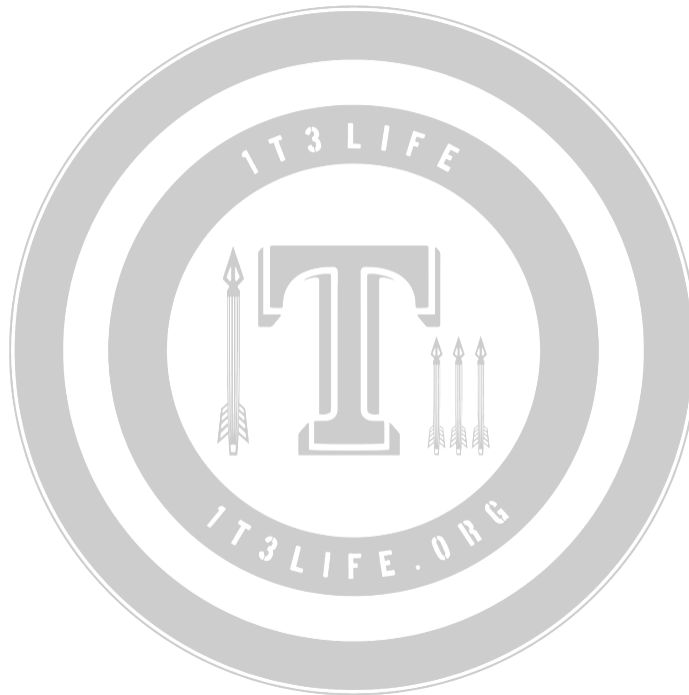


To better understand the handout  
*A Theology of Jesus Christ's  
Great Commission*

see  
the *free* PDF handout called:

***A Guide for Life***

From  
1T3Life.org



## What is the Christian life about?

***It is only through Jesus Christ! Jesus' Method. Jesus' Motivation. Jesus' Mission.***



Feeding  
Trough,  
Cross,  
Empty  
Tomb,  
Crown,  
Only  
Way

**It is only through Jesus Christ! He is both fully God and the perfect human. Jesus Christ is *The Good News* - The Savior King - born of a virgin, died for our sins on the cross, buried in a tomb, and resurrected on the third day.**

**"The time has come," Jesus said.**

**"The kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the good news!" - Mark 1:15**

**"I am The Way, and The Truth, and The Life;  
no one comes to the Father but through Me."**

**- Jesus, John 14:6**



Yoke,  
Clean  
Water

### **Jesus' Method:**

**Come to Jesus. Be Yoked to Jesus. Learn from Jesus through God's Word.**

**"Come to Me,**

**all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest.**

**Take My Yoke upon you**

**and**

**Learn from Me,**

**for I am gentle and humble in heart,  
and you will find rest for your souls.**

**For My Yoke is easy and My burden is light."**

**- Jesus, Matthew 11:28-30**

**"Sanctify [spiritually wash] them by the Truth; Your Word is Truth." - Jesus, John 17:17**



Compass

### **Jesus' Motivation:**

**Love the LORD and others as Jesus did.**

(a) Love the LORD: "Love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength." - Jesus, Mark 12:30

(b) Love the Church: "Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another. By this all men will know that you are my disciples, if you love one another." - Jesus, John 13:34-35

(c) Love your neighbor: "Love your neighbor as yourself." - Jesus, Matthew 22:39

(d) Love your enemies: "Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you." - Jesus, Luke 6:27-28

(e) By obeying God's Word: "If you love Me, you will keep My commandments. And I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Counselor [the Holy Spirit] to be with you forever. He is the Spirit of Truth. The world is unable to receive Him because it doesn't see Him or know Him. But you do know Him, because He remains with you and will be in you." - Jesus, John 14:15-17



Lifebuoy

### **Jesus' Mission:**

**Make disciples of Jesus that make disciples of Jesus  
(in the home, in the church, and in the world).**

**"All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.**

**Go, therefore, make disciples from all the nations,**

**[note: the first step in making disciples is sharing the good news]**

**baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,**  
**teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.**

**And behold, I am with you always, to the very end of the age."**

**- Jesus, Matthew 28:18-20**



## Addendums

# Addendums

**-The Christian Ethical System**

**-A Look at Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances**

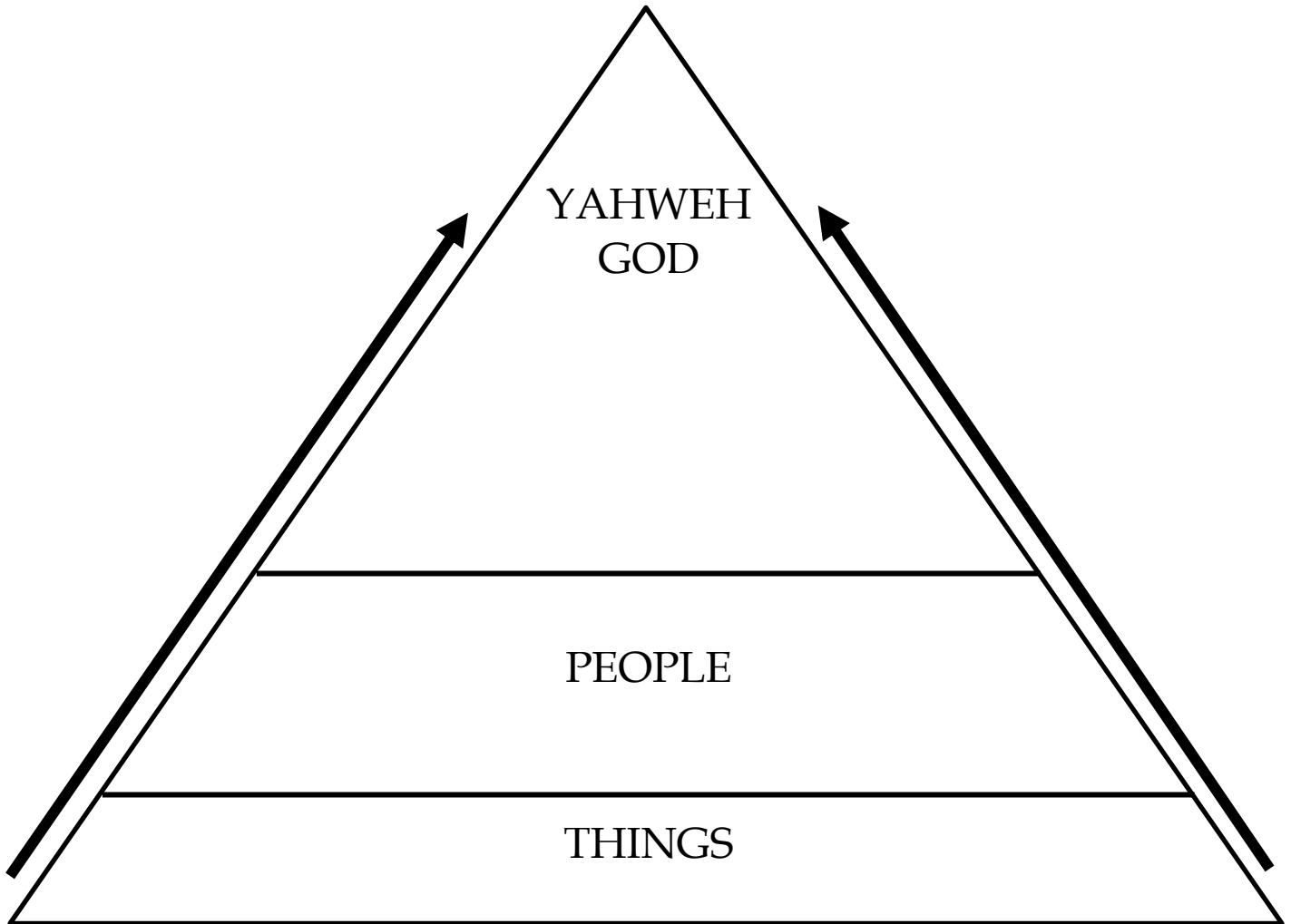




# The Christian Ethical System

**"Jesus answered, "The foremost is, 'HEAR, O ISRAEL! THE LORD OUR GOD IS ONE LORD; <sup>30</sup> AND YOU SHALL LOVE THE LORD YOUR GOD WITH ALL YOUR HEART, AND WITH ALL YOUR SOUL, AND WITH ALL YOUR MIND, AND WITH ALL YOUR STRENGTH.' <sup>31</sup> The second is this, ' YOU SHALL LOVE YOUR NEIGHBOR AS YOURSELF.' There is no other commandment greater than these."-Mark 12:29-32**

You should always choose the highest good, which is always God, meaning:  
Yahweh God is more important than people  
People are more important than things



For directions on how to live the Christian Ethical System  
see the Holy Spirit's instructions in the rest of the Scriptures and specifically see  
Jesus' brilliant discourse in Matthew 5-7.



## Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances

### A Look at Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances

“Do not merely listen to the word, and so deceive yourselves. Do what it says.”

- James 1:22

“His divine power has given us everything we need *for life* and *godliness* through our knowledge of him who called us by his own glory and goodness. Through these he has given us his very great and precious promises, so that through them you may participate in the divine nature and escape the corruption in the world caused by evil desires.

- 2 Peter 1:3-4

“All Scripture is God-breathed and is useful for teaching, rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness,<sup>17</sup> so that the man of God may be thoroughly equipped for every good work.

- 2 Timothy 3:15-17

“Whatever you do, do it all for the glory of God.”

- 1 Corinthians 10:31b

#### God owns it ALL

“The Mighty One, God the LORD,  
Has spoken and called the earth  
From the rising of the sun to its going down . . .

<sup>10</sup> For every beast of the forest *is* Mine,  
*And* the cattle on a thousand hills.

<sup>11</sup> I know all the birds of the mountains,  
And the wild beasts of the field *are* Mine.

<sup>12</sup> “If I were hungry, I would not tell you;  
For the world *is* Mine, and all its fullness.”-Psalm 50:1,10-12

“The earth is the LORD’S, and all it contains, the world, and those who dwell in it.”-Psalm 24:1

#### God is the Provider

“Therefore I say to you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat or what you will drink; nor about your body, what you will put on. Is not life more than food and the body more than clothing?<sup>26</sup> Look at the birds of the air, for they neither sow nor reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not of more value than they?<sup>27</sup> Which of you by worrying can add one cubit to his stature?<sup>28</sup> “So why do you worry about clothing? Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow: they neither toil nor spin;<sup>29</sup> and yet I say to you that even Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these.<sup>30</sup> Now if God so clothes the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, *will He* not much more *clothe* you, O you of little faith?<sup>31</sup> “Therefore do not worry, saying, ‘What shall we eat?’ or ‘What shall we drink?’ or ‘What shall we wear?’<sup>32</sup> For after all these things the Gentiles seek. For your heavenly Father knows that you need all these things.<sup>33</sup> But seek first the kingdom of God and His righteousness, and all these things shall be added to you.<sup>34</sup> Therefore do not worry about tomorrow, for tomorrow will worry about its own things. Sufficient for the day *is* its own trouble.”-Matthew 6:25-34



## Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances

### God is a Planner

"Him, being delivered by the determined purpose and foreknowledge of God, you have taken by lawless hands, have crucified, and put to death"-Acts 2:23

"Therefore, the One whom you worship without knowing, Him I proclaim to you: <sup>24</sup> God, who made the world and everything in it, since He is Lord of heaven and earth, does not dwell in temples made with hands. <sup>25</sup> Nor is He worshiped with men's hands, as though He needed anything, since He gives to all life, breath, and all things. <sup>26</sup> And He has made from one blood every nation of men to dwell on all the face of the earth, and has determined their preappointed times and the boundaries of their dwellings, <sup>27</sup> so that they should seek the Lord, in the hope that they might grope for Him and find Him, though He is not far from each one of us; <sup>28</sup> for in Him we live and move and have our being."-Acts 17:23c-28a

### God is the Wise Counselor

<sup>33</sup> Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! How unsearchable *are* His judgments and His ways past finding out!

<sup>34</sup> *"For who has known the mind of the LORD?*

*Or who has become His counselor?"*

<sup>35</sup> *"Or who has first given to Him*

*And it shall be repaid to him?"*

<sup>36</sup> For of Him and through Him and to Him *are* all things, to whom *be* glory forever. Amen."-Romans 11:33-36

"When the Counselor comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth who goes out from the Father, he will testify about me." -Jesus, John 15:26

### God directs us to trust Him for Provision

"Now if God so clothes the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, *will He* not much more *clothe* you, O you of little faith? <sup>31</sup> Therefore do not worry, saying, 'What shall we eat?' or 'What shall we drink?' or 'What shall we wear?' <sup>32</sup> For after all these things the Gentiles seek. For your heavenly Father knows that you need all these things."-Jesus, Matthew 6:30-32

"Unless the LORD builds the house, they labor in vain who build it; unless the LORD guards the city, the watchman keeps awake in vain. <sup>2</sup> It is vain for you to rise up early, to retire late, to eat the bread of painful labors; for He gives to His beloved even in his sleep."-Psalm 127:1-2

### God directs us to Plan with Him

<sup>28</sup> For which one of you, when he wants to build a tower, does not first sit down and calculate the cost to see if he has enough to complete it? <sup>29</sup> Otherwise, when he has laid a foundation and is not able to finish, all who observe it begin to ridicule him, <sup>30</sup> saying, 'This man began to build and was not able to finish.' <sup>31</sup> Or what king, when he sets out to meet another king in battle, will not first sit down and consider whether he is strong enough with ten thousand *men* to encounter the one coming against him with twenty thousand? <sup>32</sup> Or else, while the other is still far away, he sends a delegation and asks for terms of peace. <sup>33</sup> So then, none of you can be My disciple who does not give up all his own possessions." -Jesus, Luke 14:28-33

"Those who plan what is good find love and faithfulness."-Proverbs 14:22b

"The plans of the righteous are just."-Proverbs 12:5a

"The noble man makes noble plans, and by noble deeds he stands."-Isaiah 32:8

"Better *to be* of a humble spirit with the lowly, than to divide the spoil with the proud. <sup>20</sup> He who heeds the word wisely will find good, and whoever trusts in the LORD, happy *is* he."-Proverbs 16:19-20

"Do they not go astray who devise evil? But mercy and truth *belong* to those who devise good."-Proverbs 14:22

"Evil plans are an abomination to the LORD"-Proverbs 15:26

"The fear of the LORD is the instruction for wisdom, and before honor *comes* humility."-Proverbs 15:33



## Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances

"A just balance and scales belong to the LORD; all the weights of the bag are His concern."-Proverbs 16:11

"A king's heart is a water channel in the LORD's hand:

He directs it wherever He chooses.

<sup>2</sup> All the ways of a man seem right to him,  
but the LORD evaluates the motives.

<sup>3</sup> Doing what is righteous and just  
is more acceptable to the LORD than sacrifice.

<sup>4</sup> The lamp that guides the wicked—  
haughty eyes and an arrogant heart—is sin.

<sup>5</sup> The plans of the diligent certainly lead to profit,  
but anyone who is reckless only becomes poor."-Proverbs 21:1-5

"Of what use is money in the hand of a fool, since he has no desire to get wisdom?"-Proverbs 17:16

### **God directs us to Seek Him in Prayer**

"But seek first His kingdom and His righteousness, and all these things will be added to you." -Jesus, Matthew 6:33

"Be joyful always; <sup>17</sup> pray continually; <sup>18</sup> give thanks in all circumstances, for this is God's will for you in Christ Jesus."-1 Thessalonians 5:16-18

"This is the confidence we have in approaching God: that if we ask anything according to his will, he hears us. <sup>15</sup>  
And if we know that he hears us—whatever we ask—we know that we have what we asked of him."-1 John 5:13-15

### **God tells us why prayer is not answered**

"He who turns away his ear from listening to the law, even his prayer is an abomination."-Proverbs 28:9

"You want something but don't get it. You kill and covet, but you cannot have what you want. You quarrel and fight. You do not have, because you do not ask God. <sup>3</sup> When you ask, you do not receive, because you ask with wrong motives, that you may spend what you get on your pleasures."-James 4:2-4

### **God warns us about the Dangers of trusing in/loving money & to be on our guard against greed**

Jesus then told them, "Watch out and be on guard against all greed because one's life is not in the abundance of his possessions."-Luke 12:15

"No one can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and wealth." -Jesus, Matthew 6:24

"But Peter said to him, "May your silver perish with you, because you thought you could obtain the gift of God with money!"- Acts 8:20

"Deacons, likewise, should be worthy of respect, not hypocritical, not drinking a lot of wine, not greedy for money"- 1 Timothy 3:8

"For the love of money is a root of all sorts of evil, and some by longing for it have wandered away from the faith and pierced themselves with many griefs."-1 Timothy 6:10

"Instruct those who are rich in the present age not to be arrogant or to set their hope on the uncertainty of wealth, but on God, who richly provides us with all things to enjoy."-1 Timothy 6:17

"Keep your lives free from the love of money and be content with what you have, because God has said, "Never will I leave you; never will I forsake you."-Hebrews 13:5

"Whoever trusts in his riches will fall, but the righteous will thrive like a green leaf."-Proverbs 11:28

"Better a little with the fear of the LORD than great wealth with turmoil. Better a meal of vegetables where there is love than a fattened calf with hatred."-Proverbs 15:16-17



## Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances

"A greedy man brings trouble to his family, but he who hates bribes will live."-Proverbs 15:27

"Still others, like seed sown among thorns, hear the word; <sup>19</sup> but the worries of this life, the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke the word, making it unfruitful." -Jesus, Mark 4:18-19

### **God directs us to be Wise with what we have been given**

"From everyone who has been given much, much will be demanded; and from the one who has been entrusted with much, much more will be asked." -Jesus, Luke 12:48b

### **God directs us to always express Wisdom from Heaven and never Wisdom of the World**

"Who is wise and understanding among you? Let him show it by his good life, by deeds done in the humility that comes from wisdom. <sup>14</sup> But if you harbor bitter envy and selfish ambition in your hearts, do not boast about it or deny the truth. <sup>15</sup> Such "wisdom" does not come down from heaven but is earthly, unspiritual, of the devil. <sup>16</sup> For where you have envy and selfish ambition, there you find disorder and every evil practice. <sup>17</sup> But the wisdom that comes from heaven is first of all pure; then peace-loving, considerate, submissive, full of mercy and good fruit, impartial and sincere. <sup>18</sup> Peacemakers who sow in peace raise a harvest of righteousness."-James 3:13-18

### **God directs us to seek Wise Council/Advisors**

"Plans fail for lack of counsel, but with many advisers they succeed."-Proverbs 15:22

"For lack of guidance a nation falls, but many advisers make victory sure."-Proverbs 11:14

"The way of a fool seems right to him, but a wise man listens to advice."-Proverbs 12:15

"By wisdom a house is built, and through understanding it is established"-Proverbs 24:3

### **God directs us to Work Hard and Not be a Sluggard**

"There is profit in all hard work, but endless talk leads only to poverty."-Proverbs 14:23

"Dishonest money dwindles away, but he who gathers money little by little makes it grow."-Proverbs 13:11

"Diligent hands will rule, but laziness ends in slave labor."-Proverbs 12:24

"The lazy *man* does not roast what he took in hunting, but diligence *is* man's precious possession."-Proverbs 12:27

"Lazy hands make a man poor, but diligent hands bring wealth."-Proverbs 10:4

"The laborer's appetite works for him; his hunger drives him on."-Proverbs 16:26

"In the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, we command you, brothers, to keep away from every brother who is idle and does not live according to the teaching you received from us. <sup>7</sup> For you yourselves know how you ought to follow our example. We were not idle when we were with you, <sup>8</sup> nor did we eat anyone's food without paying for it. On the contrary, we worked night and day, laboring and toiling so that we would not be a burden to any of you. <sup>9</sup> We did this, not because we do not have the right to such help, but in order to make ourselves a model for you to follow. <sup>10</sup> For even when we were with you, we gave you this rule: "If a man will not work, he shall not eat."<sup>11</sup> We hear that some among you are idle. They are not busy; they are busybodies. <sup>12</sup> Such people we command and urge in the Lord Jesus Christ to settle down and earn the bread they eat. <sup>13</sup> And as for you, brothers, never tire of doing what is right. <sup>14</sup> If anyone does not obey our instruction in this letter, take special note of him. Do not associate with him, in order that he may feel ashamed. <sup>15</sup> Yet do not regard him as an enemy, but warn him as a brother." - 2 Thessalonians 3:6-15

"From the fruit of his lips a man is filled with good things as surely as the work of his hands rewards him."-Proverbs 12:14

"Do you see a man skilled in his work? He will serve before kings; he will not serve before obscure men."-Proverbs 22:29



## Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances

"He who works his land will have abundant food, but he who chases fantasies lacks judgment."-Proverbs 12:11

"He who watches the wind will not sow and he who looks at the clouds will not reap."-Ecclesiastes 11:4

"Prepare your work outside and make it ready for yourself in the field; afterwards, then, build your house."-Proverbs 24:27

"I passed by the field of the sluggard and by the vineyard of the man lacking sense, <sup>31</sup> and behold, it was completely overgrown with thistles; its surface was covered with nettles, and its stone wall was broken down. <sup>32</sup> When I saw, I reflected upon it; I looked, and received instruction. <sup>33</sup> "A little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to rest," <sup>34</sup> Then your poverty will come as a robber and your want like an armed man."-Proverbs 24:30-34

"Sow your seed in the morning, and at evening let not your hands be idle, for you do not know which will succeed, whether this or that, or whether both will do equally well."-Ecclesiastes 11:6

"Do not be deceived: God cannot be mocked. A man reaps what he sows. <sup>8</sup> The one who sows to please his sinful nature, from that nature will reap destruction; the one who sows to please the Spirit, from the Spirit will reap eternal life."-Galatians 6:7-8

### **God directs us to Give Cheerfully**

"Each man should give what he has decided in his heart to give, not reluctantly or under compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver."-2 Corinthians 9:7

### **God directs us to be Willing to Give Up Everything**

Then Jesus said to them all: "If anyone would come after me, he must deny himself and take up his cross daily and follow me. <sup>24</sup> For whoever wants to save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for me will save it. <sup>25</sup> What good is it for a man to gain the whole world, and yet lose or forfeit his very self? <sup>26</sup> If anyone is ashamed of me and my words, the Son of Man will be ashamed of him when he comes in his glory and in the glory of the Father and of the holy angels."-Luke 9:23-26

"In the same way, any of you who does not give up everything he has cannot be my disciple." -Jesus, Luke 14:33

"Then Peter said, "See, we have left all and followed You." <sup>29</sup> So He said to them, "Assuredly, I say to you, there is no one who has left house or parents or brothers or wife or children, for the sake of the kingdom of God, <sup>30</sup> who shall not receive many times more in this present time, and in the age to come eternal life."-Luke 18:28-30

### **God directs us to Tithe**

"Will a man rob God? Yet you rob me. "But you ask, 'How do we rob you?' "In tithes and offerings. <sup>9</sup> You are under a curse—the whole nation of you—because you are robbing me. <sup>10</sup> Bring the whole tithe into the storehouse, that there may be food in my house. Test me in this," says the LORD Almighty, "and see if I will not throw open the floodgates of heaven and pour out so much blessing that you will not have room enough for it. <sup>11</sup> I will prevent pests from devouring your crops, and the vines in your fields will not cast their fruit," says the LORD Almighty. <sup>12</sup> "Then all the nations will call you blessed, for yours will be a delightful land," says the LORD Almighty."-Malachi 3:8-12

"Anyone who receives instruction in the word must share all good things with his instructor."-Galatians 6:6





## Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances

### **God directs us to Give to Orphans, Widows, and the Poor**

"Pure and undefiled religion before our God and Father is this: to look after orphans and widows in their distress and to keep oneself unstained by the world."-James 1:27

"You must not mistreat any widow or fatherless child."-Exodus 22:22

"A father of the fatherless and a champion of widows is God in His holy dwelling."-Psalm 68:5

"My whole being will exclaim, "Who is like you, O LORD? You rescue the poor from those too strong for them, the poor and needy from those who rob them.""-Psalm 35:10

"He who oppresses the poor shows contempt for their Maker, but whoever is kind to the needy honors God."-Proverbs 14:31

"Is not this the kind of fasting I have chosen: to loose the chains of injustice and untie the cords of the yoke, to set the oppressed free and break every yoke? <sup>7</sup> Is it not to share your food with the hungry and to provide the poor wanderer with shelter—when you see the naked, to clothe him, and not to turn away from your own flesh and blood? <sup>8</sup> Then your light will break forth like the dawn, and your healing will quickly appear; then your righteousness will go before you, and the glory of the LORD will be your rear guard. <sup>9</sup> Then you will call, and the LORD will answer; you will cry for help, and he will say: Here am I."- Isaiah 58:6-9

"He who gives to the poor will lack nothing, but he who closes his eyes to them receives many curses."-Proverbs 28:27

"Speak up for those who cannot speak for themselves, for the rights of all who are destitute. <sup>9</sup> Speak up and judge fairly; defend the rights of the poor and needy."-Proverbs 31:8-9

"Blessed is he who has regard for the weak; the LORD delivers him in times of trouble."-Psalm 41:1

"Suppose a brother or sister is without clothes and daily food. <sup>16</sup> If one of you says to him, "Go, I wish you well; keep warm and well fed," but does nothing about his physical needs, what good is it?"-James 2:15-16

"They also will answer, 'Lord, when did we see you hungry or thirsty or a stranger or needing clothes or sick or in prison, and did not help you?' <sup>45</sup> "He will reply, 'I tell you the truth, whatever you did not do for one of the least of these, you did not do for me.' <sup>46</sup> "Then they will go away to eternal punishment, but the righteous to eternal life.""-Jesus, Matthew 25:44-46

### **God directs us to Give Generously**

"The wicked borrow and do not repay, but the righteous give generously"-Psalm 37:21

"One man gives freely, yet gains even more; another withholds unduly, but comes to poverty."-Proverbs 11:24

"A generous man will prosper; he who refreshes others will himself be refreshed."-Proverbs 11:25

"I tell you, use worldly wealth to gain friends for yourselves, so that when it is gone, you will be welcomed into eternal dwellings."-Luke 16:9

"So I thought it necessary to urge the brothers to visit you in advance and finish the arrangements for the generous gift you had promised. Then it will be ready as a generous gift, not as one grudgingly given. <sup>6</sup> Remember this: Whoever sows sparingly will also reap sparingly, and whoever sows generously will also reap generously. <sup>7</sup> Each man should give what he has decided in his heart to give, not reluctantly or under compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver. <sup>8</sup> And God is able to make all grace abound to you, so that in all things at all times, having all that you need, you will abound in every good work. <sup>9</sup> As it is written:

"He has scattered abroad his gifts to the poor;  
his righteousness endures forever."

<sup>10</sup> Now he who supplies seed to the sower and bread for food will also supply and increase your store of seed and will enlarge the harvest of your righteousness. <sup>11</sup> You will be made rich in every way so that you can be generous on every occasion, and through us your generosity will result in thanksgiving to God.



## Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances

<sup>12</sup> This service that you perform is not only supplying the needs of God's people but is also overflowing in many expressions of thanks to God. <sup>13</sup> Because of the service by which you have proved yourselves, men will praise God for the obedience that accompanies your confession of the gospel of Christ, and for your generosity in sharing with them and with everyone else. <sup>14</sup> And in their prayers for you their hearts will go out to you, because of the surpassing grace God has given you. <sup>15</sup> Thanks be to God for his indescribable gift!"-2 Corinthians 9:5-15

"Command those who are rich in this present world not to be arrogant nor to put their hope in wealth, which is so uncertain, but to put their hope in God, who richly provides us with everything for our enjoyment. <sup>18</sup> Command them to do good, to be rich in good deeds, and to be generous and willing to share. <sup>19</sup> In this way they will lay up treasure for themselves as a firm foundation for the coming age, so that they may take hold of the life that is truly life."-1 Timothy 6:17-19

### God directs us to Give to Sacrificially

"<sup>44</sup> They all gave out of their wealth; but she, out of her poverty, put in everything—all she had to live on."-Mark 12:44

"And now, brothers, we want you to know about the grace that God has given the Macedonian churches. <sup>2</sup> Out of the most severe trial, their overflowing joy and **their extreme poverty** welled up in rich generosity. <sup>3</sup> For I testify that they gave as much as they were able, and even beyond their ability. Entirely on their own, <sup>4</sup> they urgently pleaded with us for the privilege of sharing in this service to the saints . . . <sup>7</sup> But just as you excel in everything—in faith, in speech, in knowledge, in complete earnestness and in your love for us—see that you also excel in this grace of giving."-2 Corinthians 8:1-4

### God directs us Save

"Go to the ant, you sluggard; consider its ways and be wise! <sup>7</sup> It has no commander, no overseer or ruler, <sup>8</sup> yet it stores its provisions in summer and gathers its food at harvest."-Proverbs 6:6-8

"Dishonest money dwindles away, but he who gathers money little by little makes it grow."-Proverbs 13:11b

"In the house of the wise are stores of choice food and oil, but a foolish man devours all he has."-Proverbs 21:20

"The house of the righteous contains great treasure, but the income of the wicked brings them trouble."  
-Proverbs 15:6

"One man pretends to be rich, yet has nothing; another pretends to be poor, yet has great wealth."-Proverbs 13:7

"The wealth of the rich is their fortified city, but poverty is the ruin of the poor."-Proverbs 10:15

### God directs us to Take Care of our Family's Needs (food, shelter, transportation, clothing, etc.)

"If anyone does not provide for his relatives, and especially for his immediate family, he has denied the faith and is worse than an unbeliever."-1 Timothy 5:8

"And in fact, you do love all the brothers throughout Macedonia. Yet we urge you, brothers, to do so more and more. <sup>11</sup> Make it your ambition to lead a quiet life, to mind your own business and to work with your hands, just as we told you, <sup>12</sup> so that your daily life may win the respect of outsiders and so that you will not be dependent on anybody."-1 Thessalonians 4:10-12

"If a man is lazy, the rafters sag; if his hands are idle, the house leaks."-Ecclesiastes 10:18

"The lazy man does not roast his game, but the diligent man prizes his possessions."-Proverbs 12:27

"He who tends a fig tree will eat its fruit"-Proverbs 27:18a

"A righteous man cares for the needs of his animal."-Proverbs 12:10a



## Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances

### **God directs us to Make Wise Investments**

"While they were listening to this, he went on to tell them a parable, because he was near Jerusalem and the people thought that the kingdom of God was going to appear at once. <sup>12</sup> He said: "A man of noble birth went to a distant country to have himself appointed king and then to return. <sup>13</sup> So he called ten of his servants and gave them ten minas. 'Put this money to work,' he said, 'until I come back.'

<sup>14</sup> "But his subjects hated him and sent a delegation after him to say, 'We don't want this man to be our king.'

<sup>15</sup> "He was made king, however, and returned home. Then he sent for the servants to whom he had given the money, in order to find out what they had gained with it.

<sup>16</sup> "The first one came and said, 'Sir, your mina has earned ten more.'

<sup>17</sup> "'Well done, my good servant!' his master replied. 'Because you have been trustworthy in a very small matter, take charge of ten cities.'

<sup>18</sup> "The second came and said, 'Sir, your mina has earned five more.'

<sup>19</sup> "His master answered, 'You take charge of five cities.'

<sup>20</sup> "Then another servant came and said, 'Sir, here is your mina; I have kept it laid away in a piece of cloth. <sup>21</sup> I was afraid of you, because you are a hard man. You take out what you did not put in and reap what you did not sow.'

<sup>22</sup> "His master replied, 'I will judge you by your own words, you wicked servant! You knew, did you, that I am a hard man, taking out what I did not put in, and reaping what I did not sow? <sup>23</sup> Why then didn't you put my money on deposit, so that when I came back, I could have collected it with interest?'

<sup>24</sup> "Then he said to those standing by, 'Take his mina away from him and give it to the one who has ten minas.'

<sup>25</sup> "'Sir,' they said, 'he already has ten!'

<sup>26</sup> "He replied, 'I tell you that to everyone who has, more will be given, but as for the one who has nothing, even what he has will be taken away.'" -Luke 19:11-26

"Well then, you should have put my money on deposit with the bankers, so that when I returned I would have received it back with interest." -Matthew 25:27

"Do not store up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and rust destroy, and where thieves break in and steal. <sup>20</sup> But store up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where moth and rust do not destroy, and where thieves do not break in and steal. <sup>21</sup> For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also." -Jesus, Matthew 6:19-21

### **God directs us to leave an inheritance**

"A good man leaves an inheritance for his children's children, but a sinner's wealth is stored up for the righteous." -Proverbs 13:22

### **God directs us to enjoy what He has given**

"Command those who are rich in this present world not to be arrogant nor to put their hope in wealth, which is so uncertain, but to put their hope in God, who richly provides us with everything for our enjoyment." -1 Timothy 6:17



## Some Biblical Directions for Handling Finances

### **God warns us against debt**

<sup>1</sup> My son, if you have put up security for your neighbor,  
if you have struck hands in pledge for another,

<sup>2</sup> if you have been trapped by what you said,  
ensnared by the words of your mouth,

<sup>3</sup> then do this, my son, to free yourself,  
since you have fallen into your neighbor's hands:

Go and humble yourself;

press your plea with your neighbor!

<sup>4</sup> Allow no sleep to your eyes,  
no slumber to your eyelids.

<sup>5</sup> Free yourself, like a gazelle from the hand of the hunter,  
like a bird from the snare of the fowler."-Proverbs 6:1-5

"The rich rules over the poor, and the borrower *becomes* the lender's slave."-Proverbs 22:7

"It is the blessing of the LORD that makes rich, and He adds no sorrow to it."-Proverbs 10:22

### **God warns us against co-signing**

"A man lacking in sense pledges and becomes guarantor in the presence of his neighbor."-Proverbs 17:18

"Do not be among those who give pledges, among those who become guarantors for debts."-Proverbs 22:26

"He who is guarantor for a stranger will surely suffer for it, but he who hates being a guarantor is secure."-  
Proverbs 11:15

### **God warns us to be cautious in our friendships and to be careful who we take council from**

"A righteous man is cautious in friendship, but the way of the wicked leads them astray."-Proverbs 12:26

"A wicked man listens to evil lips; a liar pays attention to a malicious tongue."-Proverbs 17:4

### **God warns us against dishonest Gain**

"A greedy man brings trouble to his family, but he who hates bribes will live."-Proverbs 15:27

"Making a fortune through a lying tongue is a vanishing mist, a pursuit of death."-Proverbs 21:6

### **God warns us against hoarding**

"People curse the man who hoards grain, but blessing crowns him who is willing to sell."-Proverbs 11:26

### **God warns us against money acquired quickly**

"Dishonest money dwindles away, but he who gathers money little by little makes it grow."-Proverbs 13:11

"An inheritance quickly gained at the beginning will not be blessed at the end."-Proverbs 20:21